



LIBRARIES

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN-MADISON

Raw, medium, well done : a critical review of editorial and quasi-editorial work on pre-1885 European sources for sub-Saharan Africa, 1960-1986.

Jones, Adam

[Madison, Wisconsin] : African Studies Program, University of Wisconsin--Madison, 1987

<https://digital.library.wisc.edu/1711.dl/G6YW6U6ZK27FH8J>

<http://rightsstatements.org/vocab/InC-OW-EU/1.0/>

Copyright 1987 The Board of Regents of the University of Wisconsin System, all rights reserved.

The libraries provide public access to a wide range of material, including online exhibits, digitized collections, archival finding aids, our catalog, online articles, and a growing range of materials in many media.

When possible, we provide rights information in catalog records, finding aids, and other metadata that accompanies collections or items. However, it is always the user's obligation to evaluate copyright and rights issues in light of their own use.

RAW, MEDIUM, WELL DONE

A CRITICAL REVIEW OF EDITORIAL
AND QUASI-EDITORIAL WORK
ON
PRE-1885 EUROPEAN SOURCES FOR
SUB-SAHARAN AFRICA, 1960-1986

Adam Jones



African Studies Program
University of Wisconsin-Madison



African Studies Program
University of Wisconsin–Madison

Editor: David Henige

Studies in African Sources, 1

Copyright © 1987 The Board of Regents of the
University of Wisconsin System
All rights reserved

Printed in the United States of America

CONTENTS

1. Preface	1
2. The story so far	2
3. The lists	8
4. Qualitative evaluation (List A)	13
5. The editors	18
6. Conclusion	19
Abbreviations and abbreviated titles of journals	20
List A (Editions)	21
List B (Analytical work on individual authors)	121
List C (Analytical work on groups of texts)	136
Index of primary authors	138
Geographical index:	
1. Angola, western Zaire, Congo	148
2. Atlantic islands	148
3. Benin, Togo	148
4. Central Africa	148
5. East African Coast	149
6. East African Interior	149
7. Ethiopia	149
8. Ghana (Gold Coast)	149
9. Guinea Bissau, Guinea Conakry	150
10. Liberia, Ivory Coast	150
11. Southern Nigeria, Cameroun, Gabon	150
12. Senegambia, Cape Verde Islands	150
13. Sierra Leone	150
14. Southern Africa	151
15. Namibia	151
16. Sudan (Republic)	152
17. West African coast	152
18. West and Central Sudan	152
Addenda	153

1. PREFACE

In 1983 Beatrix Heintze and I began preparations for a symposium on "European Sources for Sub-Saharan Africa before 1900: Use and Abuse"; and I decided that the most useful paper I could offer myself would be one which would assist participants to take stock of what had been achieved so far. I was confident that I would complete such a paper in a few months and that it would be of roughly the same length as the other papers. All I needed to do, I thought, was to list the handful of "editions" that have been published in this field since 1960 and point out that some are better than others. This would provide sufficient material to stimulate a useful discussion.

By the time the symposium at length took place in July 1986 my lists had grown far longer than I had anticipated; the problems concerning what to record and how to classify each entry had grown steadily; and there still remained a great deal to do. At the same time my motives had somewhat shifted: rather than merely performing an altruistic service for the symposium, the bibliography had become an end in itself; and I had reached the point where I needed to take advantage of other participants' knowledge in order to improve it. I received very useful suggestions from several people who read what I had written; (1) but I am conscious that this review still contains numerous weaknesses, for which none of them is responsible. No matter how often I return to each of the books and articles recorded in my notes, I cannot rely on all the details I have written down: firstly, I lack sufficient acquaintance with many regions of Africa and with the literature describing them (not to mention my limited ability to read some of the European languages required); secondly, my criteria have been continually changing as I have encountered different kinds of work, and as a result I have probably been unfair to some of the works which I have not re-examined recently.

Nevertheless, having reached the point where my investigations are beginning to yield diminishing returns, I have decided to publish the review in its present state and await further reactions. (2) Some readers will be interested solely in whether I have praised their own work sufficiently; others will use my lists merely to check whether they have overlooked any sources for "their" region of Africa. Both reactions are quite reasonable; but ideally the perusal of my paper should also stimulate some general reflections on the proper way to handle written sources. To a large extent the in-

-
1. I am very grateful to David Beach, Charles Becker, Roy Bridges, John Fage, Paul Hair, Beatrix Heintze, David Henige, Gudrun Miehe, Joseph Miller, Robert Ross and Bairu Tafla for their comments on earlier drafts of this review.
 2. If these reactions are sufficiently positive, I will eventually publish a supplement containing additions and corrections.

formation contained in the lists should speak for itself; and I have therefore kept my own general remarks to a minimum. In short, my aim is not just to congratulate some scholars and chastise others, but to encourage the next generation to produce better work. My review should therefore be seen as complementing the paper which P.E.H.Hair presented to the symposium, entitled "The task ahead: the editing of early European-language texts on Black Africa". (3)

2. THE STORY SO FAR

Without disparaging the achievements of oral historiography, linguistics, archaeology or comparative ethnography, we can safely say that our present knowledge of the history of sub-Saharan Africa before the Conference of Berlin still rests mainly on written sources. For at least three-quarters of sub-Saharan Africa the great majority of these sources were written in European languages - Danish, Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Latin, Portuguese, Spanish and Swedish. Furthermore, although a few documents written by or on behalf of Africans in these languages exist (4), they dwindle almost into insignificance when compared with the vast body of writings by Europeans.

That documents written about Africa by non-Africans raise considerable problems of interpretation is fairly obvious, and is often mentioned in works on African history. Yet having acknowledged this, most historians - whether African or non-African - tend to brush source criticism aside as quickly as possible and proceed to recount the past "as [they are sure] it actually happened". They see their prime task as being to reorganise, summarise and "interpret" the material readily available, rather than wasting time assessing the quality of the evidence which each source can offer. Raw food is simple to serve; and "raw" historical material can be manipulated to support sweeping, half-baked explanations.

The tedious task of rendering such food truly fit for digestion has been eschewed by all but a tiny minority of Africanist scholars; yet it has a long history, extending back at least as far as Kunstmann's translations of Valentim Fernandes (1856-61) and Theal's massive collections of records for southern Africa, published in the late nineteenth century. (5) In the early twentieth century good editions of travellers' accounts were published by

-
3. This, together with most of the other papers discussed at the symposium, will appear in volume 33 of *Paideuma* (1987).
 4. See John K. Thornton, "Kongo as seen in written sources, both internal and external, in the 1620s and 1630s" in *ibid.*
 5. Friedrich Kunstmann, ed., "Valentim Ferdinand's Beschreibung der Westküste Afrikas", *Abhandlungen der königlichen bayrischen Akademie der Wissenschaften* (Munich), III Cl. VIII Bd. I (1856) and III (1860), and Cl. IX Bd. I (1861); George McCall Theal, *Basutoland Records* (3 vols., Cape Town, 1883); *idem*, *Records of the Cape Colony* (36 vols., Cape Town, 1897-1903). These were of course by no means the only nineteenth-century editions of historical texts on sub-Saharan Africa.

three societies with high standards of scholarship - the Hakluyt Society in Britain, the Linschoten Vereeniging in the Netherlands and (from 1918 on) the Van Riebeeck Society in South Africa. (6) A few collections of edited documents were also published outside these societies in the interwar period. (7)

It was not until the 1950s, however, that scholars concerned primarily with the internal history of African societies began to take an interest in this kind of work. A lead was set in the francophone world by Cuvelier, Mauny and Monod, in the lusophone world by Brásio, Magalhães Godinho and Teixeira da Mota, in the Netherlands by Ratelband, in Britain by Blake and later by Beckingham and Huntingford. (8) It was gradually recognised by historians and anthropologists alike that early sources could serve as documentation not merely of European activities but also of the history of Africans.

This field of research suddenly became popular in the 1960s. The creation of the *Journal of African History* in 1960 marked what was virtually the opening of a new era, and in the ensuing decade a host of dissertations,

-
6. e.g. E.G.Ravenstein, ed., *The Strange Adventures of Andrew Battell of Leigh, in Angola and the Adjoining Regions* (London, 1901); G.R.Crone, ed., *The Voyages of Cadamosto and Other Documents on Western Africa in the Second Half of the Fifteenth Century* (London, 1937); Pieter de Marees, *Beschryvinghe ende historische verhael van het Gout Koninckrijck van Gunea*, ed. S.P.l'Honoré Naber (The Hague, 1912); Dierick Ruiters, *Toortse der Zee-Vaert (1623)*, ed. S.P.l'Honoré Naber (The Hague, 1913); Leo Fouché, ed., *Dagboek van Adam Tas, 1705-1706* (Cape Town, 1914).
 7. e.g. Elizabeth Donnan, *Documents Illustrative of the History of the Slave Trade to America* (4 vols., Washington, 1930-35), I-II.
 8. e.g. O. de Bouveignes & J.Cuvelier, *Jérôme de Montesarchio, apôtre du vieux Congo* (Namur, 1951); Valentim Fernandes, *Description de la Côte Occidentale d'Afrique (Sénégal au Cap de Monte, Archipels)*, ed. Th.Monod, A.Teixeira da Mota, R.Mauny (Bissau, 1951); *De la première découverte de Guinée, Récit par Diogo Gomes (fin XV^e siècle)*, ed. Th.Monod, R.Mauny, G.Duval (Bissau, 1959); Duarte Pacheco Pereira, *Esmeraldo de Situ Orbis*, ed. R.Mauny (Bissau, 1956); K.Ratelband, ed., *Reizen naar West-Afrika van Pieter van den Broecke, 1605-1614* (The Hague, 1950); idem, *Vijf dagregisters van het kasteel São Jorge da Mina (Elmina) aan de Goudkust (1645-1647)* (The Hague, 1953); John Blake, *Europeans in West Africa, 1480-1560* (2 vols., London, 1942); C.F.Beckingham & G.B.Huntingford, eds., *Some Records of Ethiopia 1593-1646* (London, 1954). For Brásio see List A. Mention should also be made of the editions of English works on southern and central Africa produced in the 1940s and 1950s by J.P.R.Wallis. A higher standard of scholarship was attained by Isaac Schapera's editions of Livingstone's papers; most of these are in List A, but the first, *David Livingstone; Family Letters 1841-56* (London, 1959), is excluded for chronological reasons.

books and articles appeared. Yet it was precisely the variety of non-written sources available that made this field so attractive; and the more exotic they were, the more attention they received. (9)

One field that did not benefit much from the renaissance of African historiography was the critical study of written sources. Not that such sources were ignored: the Public Record Office in London, for instance, became the Mecca of hundreds of historians interested in Africa; and in academic libraries old books on Africa were in great demand. With a few exceptions, however, the manner in which written sources were used, both by anthropologists and by historians, fell short of that common in the historiography of other parts of the world.

Understandably, publishers took advantage of the growing demand for European "classics" on Africa by issuing facsimile reprints. In all too many cases these were nothing but reprints. A few were supplemented by a new introduction, and several were given some annotation; but these additions were hardly ever as useful as they might have been. (10) Indeed, in a few cases they actually marked a step backwards. (11) Of course, reprints were necessary; and facsimiles are more reliable than reprints (although there is something to be said for resetting German books which originally appeared in Gothic script). Yet it could be argued that from the researcher's point of view, some reprints even did more harm than good, making it uneconomic for a publisher to issue another edition of superior quality at a later date. (12)

-
9. See, for example, Jan Vansina, Raymond Mauny and L.V. Thomas, eds., *The Historian in Tropical Africa* (London, 1964); *Journal of African History*, III, 1 (1962); J.D. Fage, ed., *Africa Discovers Her Past* (London, 1970); Daniel F. McCall, *Africa in Time Perspective* (Boston, 1964).
 10. A large number of "raw" facsimile reprints on precolonial sub-Saharan Africa were published in the 1960s and 1970s by Kraus Reprint (Nendeln), Johnson Reprint Corporation (New York), Books of Rhodesia (Bulawayo), Anthropological Publications (Oosterhout, N.B.) and Negro Universities Press (New York). Frank Cass (London) produced in the late 1960s very many reprints, most of them "raw" facsimiles but also a few with an introduction and/or annotation, usually rather inadequate. The Akademische Druck- und Verlagsanstalt (Graz) and Gregg International (Farnborough) adopted a similarly mixed policy. Rather more impressive was the achievement of Chatto & Windus (London), who produced some high-quality editions of works on southern Africa. Unfortunately I did not begin to note publishers' names systematically until a late stage in my research for this review.
 11. A good example is List A: GORDON-BROWN 1967. Although this has the advantage of being a facsimile of Burchell's original book, it is of little use to anyone when compared with Isaac Schapera's scholarly edition of the same book (1953).
 12. I myself, for instance, would have welcomed the chance to prepare editions of the works of William Smith (1744) and Theodore Canot (1854), had the market not been cornered by the over-hasty publication of new editions. See List B: JONES 1980, 1981.

Obviously in some cases a straightforward republication without any editorial apparatus is more justifiable than in others. Microform republication of rare books is useful to scholars and does very little harm, since at present it hardly affects the future market for scholarly editions. Certainly no-one can object to the microfilms and microfiches of mission archives, newspapers, government publications etc. that have been commercially published in the past fifteen years. Here too, of course, users benefit enormously if the microform is accompanied by an introduction, a detailed list of contents or an index; (13) but the production of the microform does not in itself preclude the publication of such editorial additions at a later date. Moreover, such sources tend to contain a huge and unwieldy miscellany of data, so that it is unrealistic in most cases to expect that any scholar will in the near future provide detailed annotation. The same applies to reprints such as the Irish Universities Press series of *British Parliamentary Papers* - 70 large volumes of official documents on Africa (mainly nineteenth-century), sensibly re-arranged in groups (following the advice of three Africanist historians), but otherwise untouched. These make an enormous amount of valuable material more easily accessible to historians of Africa (as do the Slave Trade volumes in the same series), although it is generally advisable to check important matters in the original documents on which the papers were based (most of which still exist in the Public Record Office). (14)

Nevertheless, these are in my view exceptions and do not in themselves prove the case for un-edited reprints. Furthermore, the choice of which books to reprint has sometimes been made on doubtful criteria. Commercial rather than scholastic considerations probably explain, for instance, why reprints were issued of the largely fictitious voyage of Joseph Hawkins (originally published in 1797) or of the 1705 English translation of Willem Bosman and the German and French translations (1670, 1686) of Olfert Dapper (rather than the Dutch originals or an adequate modern translation). (15) One also wonders, for example, whether a better job could not have been done with

-
13. Two examples from my own area of research illustrate what can be done; List A: JONES-QUARTEY 1968; David Henige, "Correspondence from the outposts to Cape Coast Castle, 1681-1699: A guide to Rawlinson, C.745-747" (Cooperative Africana Microform Project, Madison, 1972).
 14. The volumes of Parliamentary Papers dealing with Africa were published by Irish Universities Press (Shannon) between 1968 and 1971, with Roland Oliver, Shula Marks and D.H.Jones as editorial consultants.
 15. A few aspects of Hawkins' book, *A History of a Voyage to the Coast of Africa...* (Philadelphia, 1797) have been examined by John Fage (unpublished notes, 1985). For more extensive analysis of two other writers, Richard Drake and John Duncan, see List B: McCASKIE 1984; JOHNSON 1974. For defects in the English translation of Bosman see List B: DANTZIG 1974. For comments on the translations of Dapper see List A: HAIR 1974a and THILMANS 1971; List C: JONES 1986.

Mungo Park's two books, which have been published again and again - in English, German, French and perhaps in other languages - with different introductions, each of which displays profound ignorance of (and indifference towards) the countries through which he travelled and the historical situation in which he lived. (16)

The foundation in 1974 of a new journal, *History in Africa*, represented in part an attempt to remedy the situation. The editor, David Henige, wrote in his introduction to the first volume:

"The sources for early (and even recent) African history are not abundant, and a desire to make the fullest possible use of their testimony is both understandable and reasonable. The inevitable result, however, has been that historians have used sources more often than they have analyzed or understood them." (17)

Several articles dealing with problems raised by particular written sources (as well as by other kinds of source) have been published in this journal; and although still ignored by a surprising number of historians, *History in Africa* has undoubtedly helped to sharpen awareness of the difficulties which such sources pose, such as plagiarism, inaccurate translation or fictitious travellers' accounts.

Nonetheless, much of the critical work undertaken by the editor of a text is still unlikely to be fully appreciated by historians of Africa. Any new edition is, of course, generally given a pat on the back and used as a source of reference by historians interested in the area concerned, because it saves them a great deal of trouble; but even they seldom pause to consider the significance of the edition as a whole, in quite the same way as they would evaluate a piece of historical synthesis. It is still inconceivable, for instance, that an edition could stimulate the same kind of debate as followed the publication of Rodney's *How Europe Underdeveloped Africa* (1972) or Curtin's *The Atlantic Slave Trade: A Census* (1969). (18)

Editorial work still has an inferior status within African historical studies. It is almost unknown for a European, American or African university to accept editorial work on European-language sources *per se* as the basis for awarding a postgraduate degree in African history (although the same inhibition certainly does not apply to Arabic sources); and at most universities it is only works of synthesis that count in determining who should receive

-
16. See List A; ADAMS 1980; KEAY 1984; PLETICHA 1976; SCHINKEL 1984; SWIFT 1983. The 1954 edition by Ronald Miller, reprinted in 1960 and 1970, is equally poor.
 17. David Henige, "On method: An apologia and a plea", *HA* 1 (1974) 1-7, p.1. Emphasis in original.
 18. This is not meant as an expression of personal self-pity. I have been more fortunate than many editors; my two books of German sources have at least been discussed and constructively criticised, notably in David Henige; "Putting the horse back before the cart: Recent encouraging signs", *HA* 13 (1986), 177-94.

tenure or professorial status. (19) As for academic discussion, the July 1986 symposium was the first at which historians of Africa discussed the problems posed by European-language sources at all; and despite this, it was at first difficult to persuade certain people that such a discussion was necessary.

Nor is it always easy to publish editorial work. (20) Whilst certain journals have made a point of publishing scholarly editions of short texts (and deserve full credit for doing so), most of the "big" journals dealing with African history have shown little or no interest in such work. (21) The openings for publishing editions as books are likewise very limited. Frank Cass (London) ceased publishing African reprints (with or without an editorial apparatus) over fifteen years ago; and the *Akademische Druck-*

19. I have not gone into this systematically and may have overlooked one or two university degrees awarded for such work on European sources. Those I have found are given in List A: CRANKSHAW 1960; EDGECOMBE 1968; MORAES 1976; WINSNES 1986. Cf. List B: FRYE 1968; HARINGTON 1973; VALSECCHI 1979. The studies by Crankshaw, Edgecombe and Frye were accepted as M.A. theses at Rhodes University (South Africa), Harington's at the University of South Africa. It is sad to note that even at a lower level, South African universities do better than those of many other countries; see, for instance, the excellent B.A. research essay by Brigitte Lau, "A critique of the historical sources and historiography relating to the 'Damaras' in pre-colonial Namibia" (University of Cape Town, 1979).
20. See Hair, "The task ahead". A resolution on this subject passed by those who attended the Bad Homburg symposium will be published in *Paideuma* 33 (1987).
21. Some journals deserve special praise for deliberately promoting editorial work: *ANAN*; *ARB*; *BCGP*; *BIFAN*; *BIHR*; *HA*; *QBSAL*; *Studia*. "Big" journals which have shown little interest in this kind of work include: *Cahiers d'études Africaines*; *JAH*; *Journal de la Société des Africanistes* and (to some extent) *IJAHS*. Each, of course, could probably offer plausible excuses for this neglect. One factor which makes the present situation particularly serious is the recent decline in the number of journals devoted to the culture and history of individual African countries, peoples or regions. In West Africa, for example, there appear to have been no *Transactions of the Historical Society of Ghana* since 1975, no *Asantesem* since 1979, no *Boletim Cultural da Guiné Portuguesa* since 1973, no *Journal of the Historical Society of Sierra Leone* since 1978; and even the *Bulletin de l'I.F.A.N.* is running four years behind schedule. East and Northeast Africa are just as badly off; *Uganda Journal* last appeared in 1976, *Monumenta* in 1973, *Tanzania Notes and Records* in 1982, *Sudan Notes and Records* in 1981 and the *Journal of Ethiopian Studies* in 1982. (The last three appear to be "not dead but sleeping".) Apart from South Africa, very few countries are adequately catered for; and this increases the obligation upon non-national journals to do more than they have done in the past.

und Verlagsanstalt (Graz) followed suit. The Hakluyt and Linschoten societies have published little on Africa in recent years. French publishers, with the minor exception of éditions Karthala (Paris), remain on the whole indifferent to the whole notion of reprinting works on Africa, except occasionally on microfiche; and since the deaths of Avelino Teixeira da Mota and António Brásio it is uncertain whether much work of this kind will continue to appear in Portugal. In West Germany the one publisher with a commercial interest in edited reprints on Africa (apart from the Frobenius-Institut's series *Studien zur Kulturkunde*, published by Franz Steiner Verlag Wiesbaden, for which each volume requires a large printing subsidy) is Thienemann Verlag (Stuttgart), which recently took over the Edition Erdmann series; but it publishes only abridged reprints with a very poor editorial apparatus, aiming at the popular market. There are a few rays of hope in Italy (mainly works on mission history, often difficult to obtain) and in South Africa (where publishers such as Balkema, Struik and the Brenthurst Press supplement the valuable work of the Van Riebeeck Society). In London the British Academy's "Fontes Historiae Africanae" committee has also published several good editions of European texts in the last few years, but these are heavily outnumbered by the editions published in its series "Arabica" and "Aethiopica". (22) In general, the situation for editors of early European texts on tropical Africa is even less attractive today than it was in 1960.

3. THE LISTS

In order to make it easier to assess the position we are in at the moment, I decided to prepare a critical review of works published recently in this field. The task raised considerable problems. Firstly, it soon became clear that I could not limit myself to books: some of the best work is published in the form of articles, and I therefore faced the difficulty of keeping track of all the journals dealing in some way or other with precolonial sub-Saharan Africa. Secondly, it proved harder than I had imagined to establish firm criteria by which items should be selected and evaluated. I started to list "works devoted to textual criticism", but soon realised that this was too vague. (One acquaintance pointed out indignantly: "All my writings are based on textual criticism!")

In the end I was obliged to compile three lists and at the same time to admit that whatever selection I made was bound to be to some extent arbitrary. The rough criteria I have tried to follow are summarised in the following table.

22. See the *Bulletin of Information/Bulletin d'Information* of Fontes Historiae Africanae, edited by John Hunwick (Northwestern University) and published by the International Academic Union. It performs a useful task, but reflects the low priority given in some quarters to European sources for African history.

SCOPE OF THE THREE LISTS

1. **Chronological:** works published since 1960, referring to texts written in or before 1885, using the Roman alphabet. (It does not concern me whether the texts were *published* after 1885, nor whether the author was a European.)
2. **Geographical:** sub-Saharan Africa, including South Africa, the Atlantic islands (Cape Verde Islands, São Tomé etc.) and islands off the east coast, but not Madagascar. Works dealing partly with the Sahara and partly with the Sahel are *included*. Those in which more than two-thirds of the material concerns other parts of the world are *excluded*.

CRITERIA FOR INCLUSION IN LIST A ("EDITIONS")

1. The publication must include the reproduction of a text or part(s) of a text. The text(s) must be altogether at least 500 words long (unless very important).
2. Mere reprints are *excluded*. A publication must include:-
 - a) a **transcription** of a manuscript; and/or
 - b) a **translation** (new or substantially revised); and/or
 - c) a text accompanied by some new **editorial apparatus**, such as an introduction or some annotation.
3. The list *excludes* any monograph which quotes passages from a text merely in order to illustrate a historical point, irrespective of how valuable the publication of such passages might be in itself.
4. Editions of **maps** are *included*; editions of **pictures** are *excluded*.

CRITERIA FOR INCLUSION IN LIST B ("ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS")

1. Publications must be designed to enhance the appreciation of particular texts or authors. They thus serve a function similar to that of the editorial apparatus in an edition (see above: List A, 2c), except that the material concerned is not reproduced verbatim.
2. They may, for example, consist of:-
 - a) a **précis** of a neglected source;
 - b) analysis of the **motives and/or sources** of an author;
 - c) discussion of the **problems** involved in interpreting a text or set of texts;
 - d) **elucidation** of the information provided in a text.
3. The list *excludes* surveys of available material, i.e. publications which merely contain bibliographic information or describe the contents of an archive.

CRITERIA FOR INCLUSION IN LIST C ("ANALYTICAL WORK ON GROUPS OF TEXTS")

The criteria are the same as for List B, except that List C is devoted to particular groups of authors (e.g. Capuchin missionaries or Portuguese ship-captains) or of sources (e.g. sources on a particular region).

List A is intended to cover nothing but "editions", by which I mean publications offering glosses on a text (or set of texts, or extracts) quoted verbatim or in translation. Sometimes it is difficult to decide whether a work fits this definition. Portuguese historians, for instance, often publish a set of paraphrases of documents (terming this "history") or add a documentary appendix to their monograph. If an appendix is of substantial length and offers a translation or a transcription of previously unpublished material, I have been inclined to include it, since the text of the monograph sometimes serves virtually the same purpose as a commentary; but I cannot claim to have been entirely consistent about this and have in any case excluded transcriptions or translations given as the appendix to an unpublished thesis. Biographies which consist of a secondary narrative interspersed with primary material from a person's papers, such as some of the "life and letters" publications of the South African publisher Balkema, have been included. I have also mentioned several editions of maps (23) and anthologies written mainly for a non-scholastic readership, (24) but not editions of statistics (25).

List B is devoted to publications discussing particular texts or writers who dealt with sub-Saharan Africa. In a sense these perform the same task as an introduction to a reprint, except that the reader is obliged to fetch the text(s) himself. Clearly it was necessary to impose some additional limits on this list. I have not included publications discussing the value to

-
23. List A; BECKER 1981, 1985; CORTESAO & MOTA 1960; MONOD 1964; MOTA 1964; THILMANS 1975; VERGER 1968. Another illustration of how cartographical sources can be used to throw light on African history, falling outside the period covered by this review, is W.G.L.Randles, *South East Africa and the Empire of Monomotapa as Shown on Selected Printed Maps of the Sixteenth Century* (Lisbon, 1958). The forthcoming exhibition of maps of Senegambia, to be held in Dakar in 1987, will no doubt make an important contribution to this field of research.
 24. See List A; BAL 1964; FYFE 1964; GORDON & TALBOT 1981; HODGKIN 1960; JAARSVELD 1972; MARSH 1961; RICHARDS & PLACE 1960; ROBINSON & SMITH 1979. For chronological reasons I exclude Freda Wolfson, *Pageant of Ghana* (London, 1958), which complements the books of Fyfe and Hodgkin. It is striking that most anthologies appeared between 1958 and 1964.
 25. e.g. the papers in G.Liesegang, H.Pasch & A.Jones, eds., *Figuring African Trade, Proceedings of the Symposium on the Quantification and Structure of the Import and Export and Long-Distance Trade in Africa in the Nineteenth Century (1800-1914)* (Berlin, 1986).
 26. Among the major South African publications on this subject are the series of books on Thomas Baines published by the Brenthurst Press (a few contain texts and are therefore included in my list) and a number of works edited by A.Gordon-Brown. See also List B: ROBINSON 1973b. For West Africa see Walter Hirschberg, "Der ethnographische Quellenwert früher afrikanischer Bilddokumente", *Afrika heute* 1968, 56-60 (also published with slightly different wording as "Der Quellenwert früher ethnographischer Bilddokumente", *Anthropos* 63 (1968) 139-55); George E. Brooks, "Artists' depictions of Senegalese signares: Insights concerning French racist and sexist attitudes in the nineteenth century", *Genève-Afrique* 18 (1980) 75-89.

historians of European engravings or paintings. (26) Very short articles have been likewise excluded, although I feel it a pity that there are today very few journals with a "correspondence" or "notes and queries" section. (27) With regard to studies of the writings of nineteenth-century explorers I have had to be very selective, depending mainly on how much is said about Africa: the literature on figures such as Barth, Burton, Livingstone, Park and Stanley is extensive and often makes only a minimal contribution to African history. (28) Finally I have excluded articles and books which are purely bibliographic or biographical and those which confine themselves to drawing attention to an underused archival source: these urgently call for a list of their own, but fall outside the scope of this paper. (29)

List C supplements List B: each of the items refers not to an individual author or work, but to a group. Just as the items in List B could have formed part of the scholarly apparatus of an edition, so the items in List C could equally well form part of the introduction or appendix to an anthology or collective edition of the writings concerned. In writing my article on seventeenth-century German sources (List C: JONES 1982), for instance, I was to some extent aiming to reduce the length of the introductions to my editions of these sources (List A: JONES 1983, 1985). It should be noted that List C does not include works on European attitudes towards Africa (30) or on

-
27. In the early 1960s journals such as *GNQ*, *Sierra Leone Studies* and *Tanganyika Notes and Records* and *Nigeria Magazine* often had such a section. Today, it seems, such short notes and queries are published only by *AN&N*, *QBSAL* and *Notes Africaines* (Dakar).
 28. One of the most useful books is Robert I. Rotberg, ed., *Africa and its Explorers. Motives, Methods and Impact* (Cambridge, Ma., 1970). It includes essays (of varying quality) on Baker, Barth, Burton, Cameron, Livingstone, Rohlfs, Speke, Stanley and Thompson.
 29. Some guides (including several of those published by UNESCO) provide only the most rudimentary information, whilst others are really calendars and almost fall into the category of editions. See List A: SANTANA 1964-74. Cf. *Fontes Para a História do Antigo Ultramar Português*, Vol. 2 (Lisbon, 1982); Maria de Lourdes Esteves dos Santos de Freitas, ed., *Documentação Histórica Moçambicana*, Vol.1 (Lisbon, Pp. 364). The latter summarises 529 documents in the Arquivo Histórico Ultramarino (1608-1753), listing the persons and toponyms mentioned in each one and providing indexes of persons, toponyms and subjects - an extremely helpful tool for historians, but not an "edition" by my definition. Another very useful type of work is a bibliography or bio-bibliography of the writings of a particular traveller: see, for example, H. Fisher & J.-P. Farruggia, "Bibliographie de Gustav Nachtigal", *Journal des Africanistes* 46 (1976) 216-23, which covers not only Nachtigal's publications but also writings about him. Cf. G.W. Clendennen & I.C. Cunningham, *David Livingstone: A Catalogue of Documents* (Edinburgh, 1979) and the supplement by Cunningham (Edinburgh, 1985).
 30. e.g. Philip D. Curtin, *The Image of Africa: British Ideas and Action, 1780-1850* (Madison, 1964); Urs Bitterli, *Die Entdeckung des schwarzen Afrikaners. Versuch einer Geistesgeschichte der europäisch-afrikanischen*

general aspects of European sources (31).

Linguistic material features prominently in all three lists: (32) language is as much a part of African history as any other cultural feature, and analyses of wordlists etc. can certainly improve our understanding of the past. (33) My general rule has been to place a linguistic item in List A where a wordlist is reproduced in full, and in List B where it is merely discussed; but sometimes it has proved difficult to draw the boundary so neatly.

My definition of "European" sources has deliberately been left as loose as possible: it encompasses American authors and other non-Europeans, such as Blyden, Crowther, Equiano, Umhala and Wainwright, because in my view their writings raise essentially the same problems for an editor as those of "proper" Europeans. Nineteenth-century authors who transcribed, translated and/or published texts in African languages or Arabic (using the Roman alphabet) constitute a special category. (34) It might be argued that they do not belong in my lists at all; but I have included them because I regard their authorship as a dual one - that of the African narrator and that of the European scholar who learnt the language, selected particular pieces of material and published them, albeit in a language that was not his own. I have also included modern articles published in the Cyrillic alphabet but based on sources originally written in the Roman alphabet. (35) I treat

Beziehungen an der Guineaküste im 17. und 18. Jahrhundert (Zurich, 1970); Uta Sadji, *Der Negermythos am Ende des 18. Jahrhunderts in Deutschland* (Frankfurt am Main, 1979); William B. Cohen, *The French Encounter with Africans. White Responses to Blacks, 1530-1880* (Bloomington, 1980); J.D. Hargreaves, "Notes on French sources for African history in the later 19th century", *African Research & Documentation* 36 (1984) 1-6.

31. e.g. Beatrix Heintze, "Translations as sources for African history", *HA* 12: 131-61; Graham Irwin, "European sources for tropical African history", in Jeffrey Butler, ed., *Boston University Papers in African History*, Vol. 1 (Boston), 35-53.
32. Most important is the very useful series of articles by different linguists discussing the wordlists of various languages published by S.W. Koelle in his *Polyglotta Africana* (1854), collected from liberated slaves in Freetown. These were published in the *SLLR* (later *ALR* and then *AL*) between 1964 and 1975 (see Index of Primary Authors: Koelle).
33. See P.E.H. Hair, "Ethnolinguistic continuity on the Guinea coast", *JAH* 8 (1967) 247-68.
34. e.g. List A: ARMSTRONG 1982; DALBY 1968; GRAY 1962; HODGSON 1980; NEWMAN 1971; RYCROFT 1984; SCHUBARTH-ENGELSCHALL 1984, List B: FISHER 1980.
35. List A: OLDEROGGE 1969, 1971, List B: TOMANOVSKAYA 1982.

Afrikaans as a "European" language, because of the difficulty of finding a dividing-line between it and Dutch; but I exclude "Arab-Afrikaans", i.e. Dutch or Afrikaans sentences written in Arabic script. (36)

My lists deal only with works actually written or published in or before 1885 - not, for example, with memoirs relating to the 1870s but written down twenty years later. I have, however, included works which cover the periods both before and after 1885, even where they say little about the former.

In arranging my lists I have broken several rules normally observed. Where an author's surname consists of two or more components without a hyphen (e.g. Le Cordeur, Van Dantzig) I have listed him or her under the last component (Cordeur, Dantzig). Furthermore, in List A I have arranged works according to the name of the editor or, if there is none, of the author of the modern introduction or, failing that, of the modern translator. This differs from the normal procedure of listing works under the names of the original authors, because my purpose is to emphasise modern editorial work. To compensate for this innovation I have listed in my "Index of Primary Authors" the original authors referred to in the three lists.

In my "Geographical Index" I have grouped the works mentioned in Lists A and B according to geographic regions, in order to show which parts of Africa have received the best coverage from modern editors and analysts of texts. It will be seen that in terms of sheer quantity South Africa has fared much better than anywhere else. Other regions that have been moderately well served (in part reflecting the availability of documentation, though this alone is not a sufficient explanation) are Senegambia, Sierra Leone, Ghana, Zaire, Angola and the Sudan. There has also been much work that cannot be tied down so easily to a particular region, especially on European exploration of East and Central Africa and on Africa's role in the Atlantic slave trade.

4. QUALITATIVE EVALUATION (List A)

My description of the items in List A begins with a very rough summary of what the "edition" is - whether, for instance, it is a facsimile supplemented by a modern introduction, an abridged reprint, an anthology, a translation, or the transcription of a manuscript. I have not commented on the value of these alternatives, but it should be evident that although a facsimile is often the best form in which to present an old printed text, it does not in itself constitute a great achievement on the part of the editor (as some reviewers imply). Conversely, far too little credit is given to those who perform the laborious and delicate task of transcribing a manuscript, particularly one dating from before about 1700: scholars such as Brásio, Piazza and Toso deserve considerable praise in this respect.

36. e.g. Mia Braudel Syrier, *The Religious Duties of Islam as Taught and Explained by Abu Bakr Effendi* (Leiden, 1960); A. van Selms, *Abu Bakr: se 'Uiteensetting van die godsdiens'* (Amsterdam, 1979).

I do not share the purist view that every translation or edition of a source should be *in toto*. There are sometimes good practical justifications (quite apart from financial considerations) for an abridgement - for instance, where an author has plagiarised lengthy passages, or (in an edition intended mainly for an Africanist readership) where the text contains no information that could conceivably be of any relevance to the study of Africa. (Admittedly there are instances where even the most "irrelevant" passages throw interesting light on the author's thinking; the value of including such material must in each case be judged on its merits.) What is essential is that any omissions be clearly indicated; ideally, the reader should in each case be informed what has been omitted and why. (37)

Without wishing to suggest that a lengthy publication is necessarily better than a short one, I think it proper to draw attention to the page numbers given for each item. For one thing, translating and editing an enormous work like that of Nachtigal (List A: FISHER & FISHER 1972-86) is in itself a considerable feat; and it would be unrealistic to expect every page to be heavily annotated. On the other hand, it seems fair to say that a 100-page original volume usually calls for considerably more annotation (or a considerably longer introduction) than a ten-page memorandum. Yet List A shows that this is by no means always what is done.

The main focus of my evaluation, however, has been on the introduction ("intrn."), annotation ("ann."), bibliography ("bibl.") and index of a particular edition. Sometimes I have referred to these as "good" or "poor" (or, in the case of annotation, "detailed" or "sparse" - this too is a value judgement in my eyes). The absence of such an adjective generally indicates that I consider the item concerned to be adequate but no more than that. Those editions whose editorial apparatus as a whole seems to me particularly good are marked with an asterisk before the date of publication (*, not to be confused with #, which indicates a work I have not yet seen).

One purpose of this procedure is to provide future "editors" with a few models when planning their work. At the same time, of course, I am likely to make quite a few enemies. It should be noted that this "good food guide" is for gourmands, not gourmets: my knowledge of many of the works concerned is far too limited to enable me to pass judgement objectively on the quality and content of every scholar's translation or annotation, but I can say something about the technique. (38) Moreover, I readily admit that some texts require different treatment from others: for example, although the annotation of a book may seem to me sparse, this might simply reflect the fact that there is

37. I have rightly been criticised for failing to do this consistently (in List A: JONES 1983, 1985); Henige, "Putting the horse", 181.

38. A good illustration is the work of Louis Jadin, which initially struck me - knowing little about the history of West Central Africa - as excellent. I learnt from my colleague Beatrix Heintze, however, that his translations are not very reliable, that many of his sources are easily accessible in the original, and that as a source António Brásio (who made less of an impression on me) is generally to be preferred.

little any editor could add to the text; alternatively, it may under certain circumstances be legitimate to dispense with detailed annotation and provide the relevant information in an introduction or index instead. (39)

Another objection to my evaluation of textual editions might be that not all such editions are intended to serve as tools for scholars. This is true, and there is every justification for publishers seeking to provide something that appeals to the general public rather than to the scholarly community. But the analogy with a "good food guide" holds: McDonald hamburger bars are not awarded any stars in the *Guide Michelin*, despite their manifest popularity, because the Michelin stars do not represent a measure of utility to the public, let alone a moral judgement. All I am saying, therefore, is that for those who want a scholarly apparatus, some editions are more succulent than others. The question of how raw a text should be left, like the question of how rare a steak should be served, is a matter of taste. (40)

Of the four criteria by which I have measured the quality of editions, one seems particularly important - **annotation**. This, of course, means different things to different editors. Some do without it altogether; others limit their notes to the explanation of unusual words or expressions, believing that in other respects the text can speak for itself. This is better than nothing; but as I have already remarked, it has the logistical disadvantage of making more informative editions unmarketable. In my opinion the kind of dense annotation provided by Delcourt, Hair, or Thilmans and Moraes is in most cases well worth the extra effort involved. Besides clarifying strange expressions or ambiguities in the text (where this is possible), good annotation should aim to identify personal names, ethnonyms, flora and fauna etc.; to comment on ethnographic, historical, economic and linguistic information (where necessary criticising misleading statements by the author); and to refer to other sources, showing how the source concerned corroborates, contradicts or is otherwise related to other sources. A common tendency is for editors to ignore recent research (other than their own), particularly in dealing with African history, linguistics or ethnography (cf. List B: FAGE 1967). As a result, only a score or so of the editions in List A provide annotation which I would consider fully adequate. My personal taste is for the old-fashioned kind of footnotes at the bottom of the page, which can be read together with the text; but I recognise that it is generally more expensive to do this than to place the notes at the end of a text or book.

-
39. It might be thought that this saves money, because it makes it possible to produce a photo-mechanical facsimile instead of resetting the original text. But as the WILLIS-FAGE-BRADBURY edition of Bosman (1967) has shown, one can achieve the same goal at little extra expense by putting asterisks in the margin of the original and annotation at the end.
40. Charity begins at home. Rather than be accused of false modesty, I have awarded both of my own books an asterisk, although I can already see how they could be greatly improved. The same would apply to the forthcoming edition by Albert van Dantzig and myself of Pieter de Marees, *Description and Historical Account of the Gold Kingdom of Guinea (1602)* (London, 1987).

A **bibliography** is also essential for a full-length edition. Some editors consider it sufficient to list half a dozen easily accessible books "for further reading"; but a proper bibliography should provide documentation for the annotation (including, to the extent necessary, unpublished sources), as well as listing other major writings of the primary author(s) concerned.

Almost all editions feature an editorial **introduction**. To evaluate the quality of such introductions is difficult, since their nature must depend very much on the kind of text to be edited. Assuming that the title is not wholly self-explanatory (few titles are: some are highly mystifying!), the introduction ought to state clearly and concisely, as early as possible, what is being offered: for example, the author's/authors' name(s), the date of composition and/or publication, the original title, the location of the manuscript (if known), whether the edition is a translation or transcription (and if so, whether it is the first), etc. All too often I have had to wade through many pages of text before I was able to guess the answer to any of these questions, and I sometimes wonder whether certain editors take pleasure in being as elusive as possible. Many take it for granted that when they mention the names of relatively obscure places and persons all their readers will know what they are referring to.

Having given this brief information, an introduction ought generally to tell the reader something about the author and his/her motives in writing - not merely what can be gleaned from the text itself, but what is revealed by other sources. The introduction should also place the text in perspective, linking it with other sources and describing the situation in which it was composed. Something should be said about the importance of the text for historical research on Africa - not quite the same thing as writing a mouth-watering publicity blurb.

In the case of texts which are not mere reprints, the introduction must specify the principles that have guided the editing. Have the punctuation, orthography, capital letters and paragraphing been altered, for example? What is the main purpose of the annotation? If the edition is a translation, is it based on an earlier one? Is the translator's principal aim readability, literalness or retention of the flavour of the original style? What omissions or additions have been made, and why? Few introductions, unfortunately, answer any of these questions.

Finally, and very important in my view, there is the problem of an **index**. Indexing matters even more for a textual edition than for a monograph, since the majority of readers do not wish to read the text from cover to cover: they are generally looking for particular pieces of information, and a good index can help them to find these. Today the sheer bulk of literature available to historians of Africa is mounting rapidly, and it makes no sense for someone interested in, say, the history of tobacco consumption, to thumb his way through every book and article which might conceivably contain a reference to it. Besides, although one would hardly wish to see historical sources subjected to the sort of butchery applied to classic ethnographic works by compilers of the Human Relations Area Files, computerisation of information is bound to affect the collection of historical data increasingly in the future, and this will make good indexes even more indispensable. Fewer than half of the editions listed below contain any index at all, and of these only a handful possess anything more elaborate than a simple list of

page references to proper names. Also, one often finds an index entry followed by over 20 page numbers, without any subdivisions. By contrast, scholars such as Jadin and Raven-Hart (and to some extent Lye) have used their indexes as a means of supplying in an easily accessible form information which other editors prefer to tuck away in footnotes: this is an attractive solution, although I do not think it would work for all kinds of texts. I have distinguished between indexes of "names" (i.e. personal names, place-names, ethnic names etc.) and "general" indexes (i.e. those including subjects): generally I prefer the latter, if properly compiled, but I recognise that in some circumstances a general index is not necessary.

Various other items, although not essential in every case, often improve an edition. **Maps** can be especially helpful, if suitably drawn to illustrate what is important in the text; and even the reproduction (or redrawing) of old maps can throw light on a text. (41) A **glossary** of foreign terms and antiquated or unusual expressions which recur frequently is often more convenient than putting the explanation in a footnote; it may also include an account of the system of weights and measures or the currency referred to in the text. Where a large number of persons are mentioned, a "**dramatis personae**" can be useful; and in some cases a **chronological table**, a **genealogy** or some supplementary documents may illuminate the main document.

One aspect I have been unable to assess in my lists, since it would require far more time and background knowledge, is the amount of care with which editions are actually published. A monograph is judged chiefly by its success in imparting ideas or information; an edition must convey information too, but how it does so is also important. Ideally, an edition should be a piece of craftsmanship, designed to serve posterity; and it is therefore particularly desirable that it be published in a presentable form. This is partly a question of layout, paper quality, illustrations etc.; but most editors, of course, are subject to financial constraints. Those who are not can produce lavishly bound and illustrated editions which will appeal to the coffee-table market, but they do not thereby automatically make a greater contribution to scholarship. (42) I greatly respect those who, rather than deprive the scholastic community of the benefits of their work, opt for a cheap, less attractive form of presentation. (43) What matters far more is

-
- 41. I have not listed "old" maps where the edition concerned is a reprint and simply reproduces maps published in the original; these do not constitute an editorial contribution.
 - 42. This applies to quite a few South African publications, notably those of the Brenthurst Press. For other examples see List A; HIRSCHBERG 1962; KEAY 1984; KUP 1967.
 - 43. It is possible that some will follow Hair's example ("The way ahead") and become their own "publisher". This is more or less what Charles Becker has been doing. At the University of Ghana, certain members of the History Department have sensibly given priority to providing students with cheaply produced transcriptions and translations of important European sources; see List A, ANONYMOUS 1965; COLLINS 1964; DANTZIG 1976, 1978; IRWIN 1962; JOHNSON n.d.

simple accuracy, for instance in giving names and bibliographic citations correctly or checking that the references in an index match the pages concerned. All of us make misprints and other slips; but we should have enough pride in our work to publish a list of errata later. (44) Better still - though this may be an unrealistic idea in most cases - it would be nice to be able to publish a second edition, setting right these elementary slips and making further improvements (see, e.g., BAL 1963; HODGKIN 1960). (45)

5. THE EDITORS

One question remains: *who* should edit? From my lists it will be seen that about 200 scholars from 15 countries have been involved to a greater or lesser extent in such work since 1960. The majority of editors have been part-timers, who have also written historical studies of their own, often related to the documents they have edited. Editorial skill is seldom acquired overnight, and the danger of a dilettantist approach to editing is all the greater where the editor concerned lacks experience; on the other hand, part-time editors may have the advantage of being better equipped to see their material in a wider perspective and to appreciate what readers require of an edition. Some editors have been anthropologists, literary specialists, naval officers, businessmen and diplomats; and in several cases these have done a better job than many "professional" historians.

Equally significant, however, is the large number of historians of Africa who have not edited or analysed any source - several thousands, one assumes. Many, indeed, categorically refuse to contemplate the idea. Most striking, perhaps, is the limited number of contributions by North American and African historians - smaller, for instance, than the number for Italy or Belgium. (To speak of national "schools" of editing, though, would be misleading: most scholars develop their own individual approach as a result of their temperament and training or in response to the task before them.)

At the risk of horrifying editors and non-editors alike, I suggest that every historian of Africa who works partly with written sources should in his or her own interests attempt to prepare at least one edition, however short. Editing is not simply a useful chore, like listing the contents of an archive: it provides the close attention to a text that is otherwise so elusive. It can also offer an entirely different perspective on how written sources come into existence and what they signify (especially if it involves translation).

44. It is easier to do this if one publishes one's edition as a series of articles (see List A; HAIR (ARB) No.8 p.60 and No.11 pp.63-4) or in several volumes, published at different times (see List A; FISHER & FISHER 1972-86 Vol.2: 510-12).

45. I particularly admire those veteran editors who return to a text they published forty years earlier and re-edit it; see List A; HERMAN & KIRBY 1970 (the text was originally published by Herman in 1936-7) and WATERHOUSE 1979 (first published by the same man in 1932!).

The result, almost inevitably, is a more cautious and down-to-earth approach to African history than we have grown accustomed to in recent years.

There are strong arguments in favour of team editing; some partnerships have produced impressive results (e.g. Thilmans & Moraes, Becker & Martin, Cordeur & Saunders, Teixeira da Mota & Hair, Fisher & Fisher, Forbes & Rourke, Heintze & Mendes, Beckingham & Huntingford), as have some larger teams (see, for example, List A: BRUNSCHWIG 1966, COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969, EVANS ET AL. 1969). Team editing is certainly desirable when dealing with texts which cover a wide geographical area or contain material belonging to several disciplines (zoological, anthropological, linguistic, cartographic...). But my own experience is that unless there is a rigid division of labour, those who believe that joint undertakings can lighten the burden may well be under an illusion. No two scholars, if they approach their task conscientiously, will translate a given sentence in the same way; nor are they likely to agree on what should be in the footnotes. Too many cooks may easily spoil the broth.

6. CONCLUSION

As I have acknowledged above, my lists remain very incomplete and rather arbitrary. Nevertheless, they do show the enormous qualitative differences there have been in the editing of written sources for African history. In my own area of specialisation, West Africa, there are half a dozen scholars whose work I find it a pleasure to read, comparable with the pleasure given by a skilled cook's masterpiece; and I would urge anyone who contemplates preparing an edition to look at their work before embarking. (46) On the other hand, I can think of a multitude of instances where the chance to produce a really scholarly edition or commentary has been at least partly missed. Only a handful of the editions I have listed are likely to prove adequate for long: the majority have clearly failed to anticipate the demands which future generations will pose. (47) Some would argue that almost any new edition is better than none, (48) and that lengthy footnotes and detailed indexes provide no more than icing on the cake. In my view, however, such things are more than a pleasant luxury. The progress of African historiography will depend to a large extent on how often we pause to chew on the value of the written sources we so happily gulp down.

46. These include Bovill, Delcourt, Fisher, Hair, Teixeira da Mota and the two Senegal partnerships (Thilmans-Moraes, Becker-Martin).

47. Even the skilled annotation provided at the beginning of this century by scholars such as Ravenstein and Naber is now largely out of date with regard to Africanist information, although in other respects it has stood the test of time fairly well.

48. This appears to be the attitude of many reviewers, who give potential readers only the barest information on the sort of editorial apparatus offered in a new edition.

ABBREVIATIONS AND ABBREVIATED TITLES OF JOURNALS

<i>Africa</i>	<i>Africa: Rivista trimestrale di studi e documentazione dell'Istituto Italiano per l'Africa</i> (Rome)
<i>AL</i>	<i>African Languages</i> (London)
<i>ALR</i>	<i>African Language Review</i> (London)
<i>ann.</i>	annotation
<i>AN&N</i>	<i>Africana Notes & News</i> (Johannesburg)
<i>app(s).</i>	appendix(es)
<i>ARB</i>	<i>Africana Research Bulletin</i> (Freetown)
<i>Asantesem</i>	<i>Asantesem: The Bulletin of the Asante Collective Biography Project</i> (Evanston)
<i>bibl.</i>	bibliography
<i>BCGP</i>	<i>Boletim Cultural da Guiné Portuguesa</i> (Bissau)
<i>BIFAN</i>	<i>Bulletin de l'Institut Fondamental d'Afrique Noire, série B</i> (Dakar)
<i>BIHBR</i>	<i>Bulletin de l'Institut Historique Belge de Rome</i> (Rome)
<i>biogr.</i>	biographical information (on an author)
<i>c.</i>	century
<i>CITN</i>	Colloque International sur la Traite des Noirs (Nantes, 1985): publication forthcoming
<i>ed.</i>	editor/edited/edition
<i>GNQ</i>	<i>Ghana Notes & Queries</i> (Accra)
<i>HA</i>	<i>History in Africa</i> (Madison)
<i>Historia</i>	<i>Historia: Amptelike Orgaan van die Historiese Genootskap van Suid-Afrika</i> (Pretoria)
<i>i.a.</i>	inter alia
<i>IJAHS</i>	<i>International Journal of African Historical Studies</i> (Boston)
<i>intr.</i>	introduced (by)
<i>intrn.</i>	introduction
<i>JAH</i>	<i>Journal of African History</i> (Cambridge)
<i>JVAL</i>	<i>Journal of West African Languages</i> (Cambridge/Ibadan)
<i>LMS</i>	London Missionary Society
<i>mimeo</i>	mimeographed
<i>Monumenta</i>	<i>Monumenta: Boletim da Comissão dos Monumentos Nacionais de Moçambique</i> (Lourenço Marques)
<i>ms(s)</i>	manuscript(s)
<i>N.S.</i>	New Series
<i>pp.</i>	pages
<i>PRO</i>	Public Record Office (London)
<i>publd.</i>	published
<i>QBSAL</i>	<i>Quarterly Bulletin of the South African Library</i> (Cape Town)
<i>SNR</i>	<i>Sudan Notes & Records</i> (Khartoum)
<i>sub-intrn.</i>	"sub-introduction" (to a document or group of documents)
<i>THSG</i>	<i>Transactions of the Historical Society of Ghana</i> (Legon)
<i>trans.</i>	translated (by)
<i>transn.</i>	translation
<i>trpn.</i>	transcription (of a ms.)
<i>unpubld.</i>	unpublished
<i>vol.</i>	volume
<i>WEB</i>	<i>Wiener Ethnohistorische Blätter</i> (Vienna)
<i>*</i>	editions which I consider generally "well done"
<i>#</i>	works which I have not yet examined personally

LIST A: EDITIONS

ADAMS, Adrian, intr.

- 1980 Mungo Park: *Voyage dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique* (Paris. Pp. 355).
Reprint of the 1800/01 French transn. of P's *Travels in the Interior Districts of Africa...* (1799).
Intrn.: mainly biogr.
Maps: 1 new.

ADCOCK, L.J.G.: see DUMINY & ADCOCK 1979.

AGAR-HAMILTON, J.A.I.

- 1973 "Dr. Livingstone and the Voortrekkers. Andries Hendrik Potgieter's letter to the Rev. William Ross, 1849", *QBSAL* 28: 31-41.
Trpn. and transn. of a letter from the Chief Commandant of the Boers in the Transvaal, requesting L's removal.
Intrn.
Ann.

AJAYI, J[acobi] F. Ade, intr.

- 1970a *Journals of the Rev. James Frederick Schön and Mr. Samuel Crowther who...Accompanied the Expedition up the Niger in 1841* (London. Pp. xviii, xxii, 393).
Facsimile (1st ed. = 1842).
Intrn.: biogr. (S, C); the expedition.
- 1970b Samuel Crowther: *Journal of an Expedition up the Niger and Tshadda Rivers undertaken...in 1854* (London. Pp. xxiii, 234).
Facsimile (1st ed. = 1855).
Intrn.: biogr.; the expedition.

See CURTIN 1967.

ALEXANDRE, Valentin

- 1979 *Origens do colonialismo português moderno (1822-1891)* (Lisbon. Pp. 219).
Short monograph on 19th c. Portuguese colonialism, with (pp. 73-219) 26 texts on Angola, Mozambique, São Tomé etc. (a few of them unpubld.).
Ann.: sparse.

ALLIER, Jean-Marie, ed.

- 1980, Arnauld d'Abbadie: *Douze ans de séjour dans la Haute-éthiopie*
*1983 (*Abyssinie*) (Vatican City. 3 vols. Pp. xxix, 628; ix, 316; xvi, 288).
Facsimile of Vol. 1 of d'A's account of his travels in the Ethiopian highlands (publd. 1868) and edited trpn. of the remainder of his ms. (unpubld.).

LIST A: EDITIONS

Intrn. by Joseph Tubiana (cf. TUBIANA 1961) on the
d'A brothers and the story of the ms.

Ann.

App.: glossary of d'A's language.

Index: names.

ALPERS, Edward A.

1983

"The story of Swema: Female vulnerability in 19th century East Africa", in: Claire Robertson & Martin A. Klein, eds., *Women and Slavery in Africa* (Madison), 185-219.
Republishes and discusses an extract from: J. Gaume, *Suéma, ou La petite esclave africaine enterrée vivante* (1870), = a missionary pamphlet, translated from Swahili, 1866.

AMBRÓSIO, António

1970

"Manuel Rosário Pinto (a sua vida)", *Stvdia* 30-31: 205-329.
Trpn. of history of São Tomé (completed 1734, first publ. 1937) by a priest born in S.T.
Intrn.: biogr.; the ms.
Bibl. (brief).

ANDRADE, António Alberto de

1970

"Bernardino Álvares de Andrade, um 'guineense' esquecido (Achegas para a história da Guiné e da Serra Leoa)", *BCGP* 25: 177-215.

Trpn. of a ms. of 1777, first publ. in 1917 (not the text by B.A.d.A. publ. by D. Peres, 1952), on Guinée and Sierra Leone.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

Apps.: 13 supplementary documents on Sierra Leone, 1752-66.

1971

"O Regimento do fundador de Benguela (1615) e o sentido humano e científico dessa 'Conquista'", *Stvdia* 33: 7-89.

Trpn. of royal instructions to Manuel Cerveira Pereira, founder of Benguela (8 pp.), with 6 shorter contemporary documents and photos (13 pp.) of a rutter of the Angola coast by CP and Domingos Fernandes, 1617.

Intrn.: biogr.; the founding of Benguela; exploration of the coast; analyses the *regimento*.

App.: list of documents relating to MCP.

ANDRADE, Guilherme Freire d': see NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF RHODESIA 1962-75.

ANONYMOUS

1960

"The diary of Charles Harland Bell, II", *AN&N* 14, 2: 39-49.

Trpn. of the second part of B's diary ("Kei expedition 1851").

Intrn. (brief).

2 footnotes.

1962-3

"Mary Elizabeth Barber's 'Wanderings in South Africa'", *QBSAL* 17: 39-53, 61-74, 103-16; 18: 3-17, 55-68.

Trpn. of an account of a journey from Kimberley to Cape Town and Natal, 1879.

Intrn.

Ann.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- [1965] *Governor Carstensen's Diary 1842-1850* (Legon: mimeo. Pp. 69).
Transn. of 27 extracts from the diary of Edw. C (see
NORREGARD 1964), the last Danish Governor on the Gold Coast:
reflections on the slave trade and the plan to cede Danish
possessions to Britain.
No intrn. (except explanation of 4 terms)
- 1966 "A provisional translation of an extract from O. Dapper,
Beschreibung [sic] von Afrika (German edn., Amsterdam 1670)",
GNQ 9: 15-17.
Transn. of part of Olfert Dapper's account of the Gold Coast
"kingdoms"; ignores the Dutch original (1668) and D's use of
the 1629 map (see DAAKU & DANTZIG 1966).
- 1968 John Centlivres Chase: *The Natal Papers. A reprint of all
notices and public documents connected with that territory...*
(Cape Town. Pp. xv, 135, 320).
Facsimile of the 1843 ed., with a new list of contents
(detailed), bibl. (brief) and index (general).
- 1969 *The Victoria Falls, Zambesi River. Sketched on the Spot by
Thomas Baines, F.R.G.S.* (Bulawayo. Pp. 8).
Facsimile (plates in colour) of the 1865 ed., including B's
text.
Intrn. by "L.W.B." (brief): mainly biogr.
- 1971 "An American visitor to the Cape in 1866", *QBSAL* 25: 114-26.
Extract from Nicholas Pike, *Sub-Tropical Rambles in the Land
of Aphanerteryx* (1873).
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1972 "Edward John Ensor at the Cape in 1852", *AN&N* 20, 3: 102-9.
Trpn. of the journal and letters of an Englishman, 1852-3.
Intrn.
- 1973 "Some letters by William Nelson", *AN&N* 20, 5: 164-89 and 6:
195-227.
Extracts from *The Masbro Advertiser* (a newspaper), 1877,
based on letters from M referring to the Cape.
Intrn. (brief).
- 1976 "Letter by Elizabeth, wife of Dr. John Atherton", *AN&N* 22, 2:
72-6.
Trpn. of a letter written in Cape Town, 1824.
Intrn.
Ann.
- #1979 Arthur Rimbaud: *Lettere dell'Abyssinia* (Turin. Pp. x, 110).
- #1981 V.L.Cameron: *Peresekaya Afriku* (Moscow. Pp. 454).
Russian transn. of C's *Across Africa* (1877).
- 1984 "A missionary's account of Transvaal life in 1839", ed. 'H.B.',
AN&N 26, 1: 20-29.
Trpn. of a letter from Alexander Erwin Wilson, 1839.
Intrn.
Ann.: 2 footnotes.

LIST A: EDITIONS

ANTOINE, Régis

1974

"Aventures d'un jeune négrier français d'après un manuscrit inédit du XVIII^e siècle", *Notes Africaines* 142: 51-6.
Trpn. of extracts from a ms. by Jacques Proa (1806) on 3 slaving voyages to Senegal and Whydah, 1777-82; linked by editorial narrative.

Intrn. (brief).

Ann. (sparse).

ARDENER, Edward & Shirley, eds.

*1972

John Clarke: *Specimens of Dialects* (Farnborough. Pp. 76, 104). Linguistic material collected among slaves on Fernando Po by a Baptist missionary, 1841 and 1844-7: facsimile (1st ed. = 1848).

Intrn.: biogr.

Ann. (detailed): mainly identifying C's "dialects".

Bibl. (good).

ARDENER, Shirley G.

1968

Eye-Witnesses to the Annexation of Cameroon, 1883-1887 (Buea. Pp. 88).

Extracts from English and (translated) German sources, interspersed with editorial passages.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

Apps.: treaties, 1840-84.

Maps: 1 new.

Bibl.

AREGAY, Herid V.

1964

"Two inedited [= unpubld.] letters of Galawdewos, emperor of Ethiopia (1540-1559)", *Stvdia* 13-14: 363-76.

Trpn. of G's letters (in Portuguese) to Dom Pedro Mascarenhas and John III, 1555.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

ARNDT, Helmut, ed.

1981a

Alfred Edmund Brehm: *Reisen im Sudan* (Munich. Pp. 411). Reprint of B's *Reise-Skizzen aus Nord-Ost Afrika* (1853), describing his travels in the Sudan, 1847-52.

Intrn.

Ann. (good on edifices and Europeans, weak on ethnography).

Bibl.: German literature.

1981b

Johann Ludwig Burckhardt: *Entdeckungen in Nubien 1813-1814* (Tübingen. Pp. 352).

(Apparently an abridgement of the) German transn. (1820) of B's *Travels in Nubia* (1819).

Intrn.: mainly narrative.

Ann.

App.: glossary of Arabic/Turkish titles and ranks.

Maps: 2 old.

Bibl.: B's writings.

LIST A: EDITIONS

ARQVIVOS DE ANGOLA (Museu de Angola, Luanda), 2.^a Série:

[Each volume has an intrn. (usually brief) and
index (general); hardly any ann.]

- 1960 (XVII) *Volume comemorativo da chegada de Paulo Dias de Novais a Angola 1560-1960* (Pp. xi, 238).
53 documents on D, 1559-99, each preceded by a brief summary.
- 1961 (XVIII) *Ofícios para o reino de Luís da Mota Feo 1816-1819* (Pp. xxv, 335).
224 documents.
- 1962 (XIX) *Ofícios para o reino do Governador D. Fernando António de Noronha (1802 a 1806)* (Pp. xxviii, 158).
115 documents.
- 1963 (XX) *Ofícios para o reino do Governador D. Miguel Antonio de Melo (1797 a 1802)* (Pp. xxiv, 209).
64 documents.

ATANDA, Joseph A., ed.

- 1972 William H. Clarke: *Travels and Explorations in Yorubaland, 1854-1858* (Ibadan. Pp. xxxvii, 297).
Memoirs of a Baptist missionary (Nigeria): trpn.
Intrn.: biogr.; based partly on C's letters.
Ann.
Maps: 3 new.
Index: names.

AYANDELE, Emmanuel A., intr.

- 1968 T.J. Bowen: *Central Africa: Adventures and Missionary Labours* [sic: = Labors] *in...the Interior of Africa from 1849 to 1856* (London. Pp. L, 359).
Facsimile (1st ed. = 1857).
Intrn. (based on the text and B's papers) critically assesses his attitude towards Africans.

BA, Omar, ed.

- 1976 *La pénétration française au Cayor. Du règne de Birima N'Goné Latyr à l'intronisation de Madiodo Dèguène Codou. I: Première et deuxième partie, 16 décembre 1854 - 28 mai 1861* (New York. Pp. 503).
Trpn. of documents from the Senegal archives.
Intrn. (brief).
Commentary: material from publ. sources, oral traditions etc.
Maps: 9 old, 2 new.

BACKETT, B. Maurice: see HARGREAVES & BACKETT 1969.

LIST A: EDITIONS

BAESJOU, René, ed.

*1979

An Asante Embassy on the Gold Coast: The mission of Akyempon Yaw to Elmina, 1869-1872 (Leiden. Pp. 250).
Transn. of 151 unpubl. documents (mainly Algemeen Rijks-archief) on the Asante government's attitude to the proposed cession of Dutch possessions on the Gold Coast to Britain.
Intrn.: Asante-British wars, Dutch-Asante trade, European officials and Elmina elders.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: genealogy; survey of Elmina Division.
Maps: 1 old.
Indexes: 1 places and subjects, 1 personal names.

BAL, Willy, ed.

*1963

Filippo Pigafetta & Duarte Lopez: *Description du Royaume de Congo et des contrées environnantes* (1591) (Louvain. Pp. xxxvii, 253. 2nd ed., revised, 1965: Pp. xxxvii, 253).
Transn. of *Relatione del Reame di Congo et delle circonvicine contrade*, the main publ. source for 16th c. Kongo.
Intrn.: biogr. (P; L); bibliographical history; value as a source; editorial policy.
Ann. (detailed).
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

1964

Le Royaume du Congo aux XV^e et XVI^e siècles (Léopoldville. Pp. 124).
Popular anthology: transn. of extracts from documents on Kongo, 15th-16th c. (mostly already publ.).
Ann.
App.: 16th c. kings.

BANO, L.: see HUBER & DELLAGIACOMA 1973.

BARRADAS, Lerenó

1970

"Naufrágio de navios portugueses nas Ilhas Curia e Muria em 1503", *Monumenta* 6: 45-51.
Reproduces and discusses the testimony of 3 sources (2 = European: Damião de Gois, 1566; Gaspar Correia, 1858) on a Portuguese shipwreck off the East African coast, 1503.

BARRY, Boubacar, ed.

1970

"Mémoire inédit de Monserat sur l'histoire du Nord du Sénégal de 1819 à 1839", *BIFAN* 32: 1-43.
Trpn. of a report by a French official at Richard-Toll, 1839.
Intrn.
Ann.

1972

Le royaume du Waalo. Le Sénégal avant la conquête (Paris. Pp. 393).
Monograph. Pp. 345-63 (= 329-47 in 2nd ed., 1985):
trpn./transn. of 5 documents, 18th-19th c.

LIST A: EDITIONS

BASSANI, Ezio, ed.

- *1978 Carlo Piaggia: *Nella Terra dei Niam-Niam (1863-1865)* (Lucca. Pp. lxiv, 215).
P, an elephant hunter, travelled in the southern Sudan and S.W. Ethiopia. A freely edited version of his travels (from various sources) appeared in 1941. B's book = trpn. of part of P's original ms., describing his stay with the Azande.
Intrn.: biogr.; narrative; later writings on the Azande.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: further extracts from B's writings; a note on the text; a linguistic note by Angelo Stella.
Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

BAXTER, T.W.: see NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF RHODESIA 1962-75.

BEACHEY, R.V.

- 1976 *A Collection of Documents on the Slave Trade of Eastern Africa* (London. Pp. xii, 140).
Anthology of sources (most of them publ.) to accompany B's *The Slave Trade of Eastern Africa* (1976).
Intrn. (brief); sub-intrns. (brief) for each document.
Maps: 1 old, 2 new.
Index: names.

BEAN, Lucy & HEYNINGEN, Elizabeth van, eds.

- 1983 *The Letters of Jane Elizabeth Waterston 1866-1905* (Cape Town. Pp. xi, 304).
Trpn. of letters of a Scottish missionary in South Africa.
Intrn.: the mss.; editorial policy; Scottish missions; biogr.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 new.
Apps.: supplementary documents.
Index: names.
Bibl.

BECK, Hanno, intr.

- 1964 Johann Ludwig Krapf: *Reisen in Ostafrika, ausgeführt in den Jahren 1837-1855* (Stuttgart. 2 vols. Pp. xxx, 505, 521).
Facsimile of the 1858 ed. (cf. BRIDGES 1968).
Intrn. (brief): K's importance as an explorer.
App.: chronological table (useful).
Bibl. (brief).

BECKER, Charles

- 1972 "À propos d'un plagiaire: le père Gaby", *Notes Africaines* 133: 17-21.
Shows that G plagiarised Chambonneau, using 3 long extracts from G's *Relation de la Nigritie* (1689) and 3 from a text by C (see RITCHIE 1968).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1981 "Cartes inédites d'Adanson sur le Sénégal", *Notes Africaines* 172: 93-100.
Reproduces 6 ms. maps by Michel A., dating from 1749-54; briefly discusses other maps by him.
- 1982a *Description d'une partie des plantes dont les nègres de l'Isle du Bisseau se servent pour la cure de différentes maladies, par M. Le Gagneur (1744), annotée par Adanson* (Kaolack: mimeo, provisional ed., pp. v, 39).
Trpn.
Intrn.
- 1982b *Trois mémoires inédits sur le commerce du Sénégal (1762-1783)* (Kaolack: mimeo, provisional ed., pp. v, 37).
Trpn.
Intrn.
- 1983a *Mémoire sur le commerce de la concession du Sénégal par Joseph Pruneau (1752)* (Kaolack: mimeo, provisional ed., pp. 121).
Trpn.
Intrn.
- 1985 "Routiers anciens, cartographie et connaissance de la vallée du Sénégal à l'époque de la traite atlantique", CITN III no. 1.
Trpn. of 2 rutters and 1 list of places on the Senegal (late 17th to early 18th c.).
Intrn.

BECKER, Charles & MARTIN, Victor

- *1974 "Mémoire inédit de Doumet (1769)", *BIFAN* 36: 25-92.
Trpn. of a document on Kayor and its neighbours by a French official who was at Gorée from 1763.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- *1977a "Journal historique et suite du journal historique (1729-1731)", *BIFAN* 39: 223-89.
Trpn. of 2 anonymous documents on Senegambia.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- *1977b "Détails historiques et politiques. Mémoire inédit (1778) de J.A.Le Brasseur", *BIFAN* 39: 81-132.
Trpn. of a copy of a memorandum on Senegal and Mauritania.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- *1980 "Mémoires d'Adanson sur le Sénégal et l'île de Gorée", *BIFAN* 42: 722-79.
Trpn. of 2 memoranda by the naturalist Michel Adanson, 1763, on his stay in Senegal, 1749-53.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).

BECKER, Charles, MARTIN, Victor, & MBODJ, Chérif, eds.

- 1978 *Documents inédits d'Adanson sur la langue wolof* (Kaolack: mimeo, pp. 68).
Trpn.
Intrn.

LIST A: EDITIONS

BECKINGHAM, Charles F., ed.

- 1964 James Bruce: *Travels to Discover the Source of the Nile* (Edinburgh. Pp. 281).
 Extracts from the 2nd ed. (1804-5) which Alexander Murray prepared with the help of B's papers (B travelled in Ethiopia, 1768-73).
 Intrn.: mainly narrative.
 Ann.: supplements that of B and Murray.
 Maps: 4 new.
 Index (good): general.
- *1984 *The Itinerário of Jerónimo Lobo* (London. Pp. xxxvi, 417).
 Transn. (by Donald M. Lockhart) of the Portuguese text (established and ed. by M.G. da Costa: cf. COSTA 1971) of the account of a Portuguese Jesuit, first publ. in French, 1728; mainly on Ethiopia, 1623-32; also Natal and Angola, 1635-6.
 Intrn. (good).
 Ann. (detailed).
 App.: chronological table.
 Index (good): general.
 Bibl.

BECKINGHAM, Charles F. & HUNTINGFORD, G.V.B.

- *1961 *The Prester John of the Indies, being the narrative of the Portuguese Embassy to Ethiopia in 1520 written by Father Francisco Alvares* (2 vols., Cambridge. Pp. 617).
 Revision of the 1881 transn. by Lord Stanley of Alderley.
 Intrn. (good).
 Ann. (detailed).
 Maps: 1 old, 7 new.
 Index (good): general.
 Bibl.

BENESCH, Kurt, ed.

- 1979 Henry Morton Stanley: *Im Herzen Afrikas* (Gütersloh. Pp. 319).
 Extracts from 19th c. German transns. of 4 books, 1872-90.
 Intrn., sub-intrns., epilogue (all brief): biogr.
 App.: chronological table.
 Bibl. (brief): S's works.

BENNETT, Norman R., ed.

- 1960 "Some letters of J.L.Krapf", *Boston University Graduate Journal* IX, 2: 45-58.
 Trpn. of 3 letters (1844-5) written at Mombasa by the Protestant missionary J.Ludwig K.
 Intrn. (very brief).
- 1968 "Livingstone's letters to William F. Stearns", *African Historical Studies* 1: 243-54.
 Letters (1866-72) publ. in the *New York Herald*, 1872.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (sparse).
- *1969 *From Zanzibar to Ujiji. The Journal of Arthur W. Dodgshun 1877-1889* (Boston. Pp. xxiv, 135).
 Trpn. of the journal of an English missionary on his way to establish a post at Ujiji.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
App.: 8 letters from D.
Maps: 1 new.
Index: names.
Bibl. (good).
- *1970 *Stanley's Despatches to the New York Herald, 1871-1872, 1874-1877* (Boston. Pp. xl, 508).
All Henry S's despatches on his 2 African expeditions.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 21 documents; list of despatches.
Maps: 4 old, 3 new.
Index: names.
Bibl.
- *1973 *The Zanzibar Letters of Edward D. Ropes, Jr., 1882-1892* (Boston. Pp. xiv, 146).
Trpn. of extracts from the letters of an American trading agent in Zanzibar.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: supplementary documents; glossary.
Index: names.
Bibl. (good).
- BENNETT, Norman R & BROOKS, George E., Jr., eds.**
1965 *New England Merchants in Africa. A History through Documents, 1802 to 1865* (Boston. Pp. xxiv, 576).
Trpn. of 249 American documents: W. and E. African coasts.
Intrn.
Ann.
Apps.: 1 treaty; 10 statistical tables.
Maps: 3 new.
Index: general.
- BENNETT, Norman R. & YLVISAKER, Marguerite, eds.**
1971 *The Central African Journal of Lovell J. Procter, 1860-1864* (Boston. Pp. xvii, 501).
Trpn. (abridged): the journal of a member of the Universities' Mission to Central Africa.
Intrn.: mainly biogr.
Maps: 1 new.
Index: names.
- BERNHARD, F.O., trans. and ed.**
1971 *Karl Mauch. African Explorer* (Cape Town. Pp. 247).
Transn. from German (into rather German English) of everything written by or about M in *Petermanns Mittheilungen* (1866-74) and *Verhandlungen der Berliner Gesellschaft für Anthropologie, Ethnologie und Urgeschichte* (1876).
Ann. (poor).
Index (poor): names.
- See BURKE 1969.

LIST A: EDITIONS

BERQUE, Jacques, intr.

- 1979 René Caillié: *Voyage à Tombouctou* (2 vols., Paris. Pp. 373, 400).
Reprint (unabridged, unaltered) of C's *Journal d'un voyage à Tombouctou et à Jenné, dans l'Afrique centrale* (1830), which includes material on Senegal, Guinée and Mali (mid-1820s).
Intrn. adds little.
Maps: 1 new.

BERRY, J[ack], intr.

- 1972 J[ohannes] Zimmermann: *A Grammatical Sketch and Vocabulary of the Akra- or Gã-Language with an Appendix on the Adãme-Dialect* (Farnborough. Pp. iii, xvi, 464).
Facsimile of the 1858 ed. (by a missionary, Gold Coast).
Intrn. (brief) shows the book's value for linguistic research.

BERTHOUD, Silvio: see LANGE & BERTHOUD 1972.

BHILA, H.H.K., ed.

- 1972 "A journal of Manoel Galvão da Silva's travel through the territory of Manica in 1790", *Monumenta* 8: 79-84.
Transn. of GdS's travelogue of 1788 (already publ. in Portuguese and French); refers to interior of southern Mozambique.
Intrn.
Maps: 1 new.

BLACKIE, J.E.H.

- 1976 "A journey through Lesotho in 1863", *AN&N* 22, 3: 92-103.
Narrative article on James Haldan Stewart, an English clergyman, with extracts (trpn.) from his diary.

BLANC, Monique Le, ed.

- 1971 *The Choiseul Papers* (Pasadena, CA.: Munger Africana Library Notes. Pp. 88).
Photocopies (55 pp.) and transn. of 4 French documents on the slave trade, 1761-2 (West African coast, especially Senegal). A classic case of the transn. being ruined by lack of Africanist knowledge: see Marion Johnson, "Interesting document, dangerous translation" (unpublished paper).
Intrn. (brief).

BOEKKE, J. du P.: see BREDEKAMP & HATTINGH 1981.

BÖESEKEN, A[nnal] J., revised by

- *1970 Leo Fouché, ed.: *Dagboek van Adam Tas (Diary of Adam Tas), 1705-1706* (Cape Town. Pp. xvi, 403).
Re-edition of the diary of the leader of a protest movement of free Dutch farmers at the Cape, publ. 1914; new English translation by J. Smuts.
Intrn.
Ann.: supplements that of the 1914 ed.
Index: names.

See SCHUTTE 1982; SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

LIST A: EDITIONS

BONTINCK, François, ed.

- 1964 Jean-François de Rome: *Brève relation de la fondation de la mission des Frères Capucins...au Royaume de Congo (1648)* (Louvain. Pp. xxviii, 150).
Transn. of an Italian book by Giovanni Francesco da Roma on the Capuchin mission to Kongo.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 2 supplementary documents.
Maps: 1 new.
Index (poor): general.
Bibl.
- 1966 *Aux origines de l'état Indépendant du Congo. Documents tirés d'archives américaines* (Louvain. Pp. xv, 479).
American documents (some unpubld.), 1877-1904, on the creation of the Congo Free State, strung together by narrative passages.
Intrn. (brief).
Index: personal names.
Bibl. (with list of documents).
- 1969 "Une lettre de la reine Victoria à Léopold II concernant le Congo", *études Congolaises* XII, 1: 97-110.
Revised trpn. of a letter from Queen Victoria to Leopold II, 1884, with contemporary documents. Discusses the letter's significance.
- 1970 *Diaire Congolais (1690-1701) de Fra Luca da Caltanissetta O.F.M.Cap.* (Louvain. Pp. v, 249).
Transn. of an account of Kongo by a Capuchin missionary (publd. in the original Italian by RAINERO, c. 1973, q.v.).
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (sparse).
- 1977a "Un document inédit concernant un missionnaire portugais au royaume de Congo (1536)", *Neue Zeitschrift für Missionswissenschaft* 33: 58-66.
Trpn. and analysis of a (Latin) brief by Pope Paul III on the Portuguese missionary Fernão de S. João, active in Kongo since 1509.
- *1977b "Le diaire de Jacob Wainwright (4 mai 1873-18 février 1874", *Africa* (Rome) 32: 399-434.
W, one of Livingstone's African companions, kept a diary from L's death till the companions reached Zanzibar. The original is lost, so Bontinck gives a transn. of the German transn. publd. in *Petermanns Mittheilungen*, 1874.
Intrn.: biogr.; narrative; principles of transn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 old (with the route of Livingstone's companions added).

LIST A: EDITIONS

BONTINCK, François, with NSASI, Ndembe

- *1978 *La Catéchisme Kikongo de 1624: Réédition Critique* (Brussels. Pp. 274).
Catechism (the earliest surviving Bantu text), produced by the 2nd Jesuit mission to Kongo; also, the Kikongo text in modern orthography; French transn.
Intrn. (good).
App.: comments by a 19th c. missionary.
Index: religious words.

BONTINCK, François, with SEGOVIA, J. Castro, eds.

- 1972 "Histoire du Royaume du Congo (c. 1624)", *études d'Histoire Africaine* 4 (Louvain. Pp. 145).
Transn. of a document publ. by Brásio (*História do Reino do Congo*, 1969).
Intrn. (good): suggests the author was not Bras Correa but a Portuguese Jesuit, Mateus Cardoso.
Ann. (detailed).
Index (poor): general.
Bibl.

BOOTH, Alan, ed.

- 1967 *Journal of the Rev. George Champion, American Missionary in Zululand, 1835-9* (Cape Town. Pp. xv, 149).
Trpn.
Intrn.: mainly narrative.
Ann.
Index: names.
- 1968 George Champion: *The Journal of an American Missionary in the Cape Colony, 1835* (Cape Town. Pp. xi, 54).
Trpn. of another part of the same journal.
Intrn.: biogr.
Ann.: mainly identification of Europeans.

BOUCHER, M.

- 1981 "An unexpected visitor: Charles Barrington at the Cape in 1737", *South African Historical Journal* 13: 20-35.
Trpn. of extracts from a journal kept on a Danish frigate anchored off the Cape.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).

BOULÈGUE, Jean

- 1967a "Relation de Francisco d'Andrade sur les îles du Cap-Vert et la côte occidentale d'Afrique (1582)", *BIFAN* 29: 67-87.
Portuguese text and French transn. of a document on Upper Guinea publ. by Brásio (*MNA*, 2nd series, III), written by a Cape Verde islander.
Ann.
- 1967b Relation du port du fleuve Sénégal de João Barbosa, faite par João Baptista Lavanha (vers 1600)", *BIFAN* 29: 496-511.
French transn. of a Portuguese document (publ. 1959).
See CURTIN & BOULÈGUE 1974; HAIR ET AL. 1984

LIST A: EDITIONS

BOULAGUE, Jean & MARQUET, R.

- 1971 "Le voyage de Richard Rainolds à Sénégal (1591)", *BIFAN* 33: 1-13.
Transn. of extract from Richard Hakluyt, *Principal Navigations* (2nd ed., 1599).
Intrn.
Ann.
Maps: 1 new.

BOULAGUE, Jean & PINTO-BULL, Benjamin

- 1966 "Les relations du Cayer avec le Portugal dans la première moitié du XVI^e siècle, d'après deux documents nouveaux", *BIFAN* 28: 663-7.
Transn. and discussion of 2 Portuguese documents publd. by Brasília (MNA, 2nd series, II).

BOURDON, Léon et al., eds.

- *1960 Gomes Eanes de Zurara: *Chronique de Guinée* (Dakar. Pp. 301).
Edited in collaboration with Robert Ricard, E. Serra Rafols, Théodore Monod and Raymond Mauny.
Transn. of a mid-15th c. Portuguese chronicle of the exploration of the coast of Mauritania and Senegal.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 new.
Indexes: 1 of personal names, 1 of places, 1 of subjects, 1 of authors and works.
Bibl. (good).

See MOTA 1977.

BOVILL, Edward W., ed.

- *1964 *Missions to the Niger, I: The Journal of Friedrich Hornemann's Travels from Cairo to Murzuk in the Years 1797-98; The Letters of Major Alexander Gordon Laing 1824-26* (Cambridge. Pp. xi, 406).
Reprint of the books of H (1802) and L (1825), with a trpn. of L's letters.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 4 old, 2 new.
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).
- *1966 *Missions to the Niger, II-IV: The Bornu Mission, 1822-25*
Reprint of Dixon Denham, Hugh Clapperton & Walter Oudney, *Narrative of Travels and Discoveries...* (1826).
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed): based partly on PRO documents.
Apps.: 20 supplementary documents.
Maps: 10 old, 8 new.
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

LIST A: EDITIONS

BOXER, Charles R.

- 1960a "Uma relação inédita e contemporânea da batalha de Ambuila em 1665", *Boletim Cultural*, Museu de Angola, Luanda, 2: 65-73. Trpn. of an anonymous ms. on the Battle of Ambuila.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1960b "A Dominican account of Zambesia in 1744", *Boletim da Sociedade de Estudos de Moçambique* 29, Secção E, 5: 1-14. Trpn. of a ms. by Fr. Francisco de Santa Catarina.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1963 "The Querimba islands in 1744", *Stvdia* 11: 343-53. Trpn. of 3 Portuguese documents (Mozambique coast).
Intrn.
Ann.
Maps: 3 old.
- 1965 *Portuguese Society in the Tropics. The Municipal Councils of Goa, Macao, Bahia, and Luanda, 1510-1800* (Madison. Pp. xvi, 240).
Monograph. Pp. 189-218: transn. of documents on Luanda 1672-1748.
Ann.
Maps: 1 new.

BRADBURY, R.E.: see WILLIS 1967.

BRADLOW, Edna & Frank, eds.

- *1979 *William Somerville's Narrative of his Journeys to the Eastern Cape Frontier and to Lattakoe 1799-1802* (Cape Town. Pp. 255).
Trpn. of S's ms., supplemented by "the Official Account".
Intrns.: 1 bibliographic (good), 1 historical.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 4 supplementary documents.
Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
Indexes: 1 general, 1 botanical, 1 zoological.

BRADLOW, F[rank] R., intr.

- 1968 Robert Semple: *Walks & Sketches at the Cape of Good Hope* (Cape Town. Pp. 198).
Facsimile of S's book (1803) on the Cape at the time of the first British occupation.
Intrn.: biogr.; contemporary reactions.
App.: modern equivalents of names.
Bibliographic information.
- 1969 C.I.Latrobe: *Journal of a Visit to South Africa in 1815 and 1816* (Cape Town. Pp. 48, viii, 403).
Facsimile of the 1st English ed. (1818) of a book by the Rev. Christian Ignatius L (Moravian Brethren) on the Cape.
Intrn.: biogr.; summary of what L described; the illustrations.
Bibl.
- #1973(?) Thomas Baines: *Explorations in South-West Africa* (? Salisbury).
Facsimile of 1st ed., 1864.

LIST A: EDITIONS

BRANCO, Fernando Castelo, ed.

- 1970 *Actas da Câmara de Santo António da Ilha do Príncipe, I*
(1672-1777) (Lisbon. Pp. xlviii, 801).
Trpn. of 688 documents on Príncipe from the Arquivo
Histórico Ultramarino, in 3 chronological series.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (very sparse).
Index: mainly names.

BRÁSIO, António, ed.

- 1952-85 & *Monumenta missionaria africana: África Ocidental* (1st series
1958-79 [1469-1699]: 14 vols. Lisbon. Pp. 8519. 2nd series [1342-
1650]: 5 vols. Lisbon. Pp. 3135).
Huge collection of documents (mostly Portuguese, mostly
unpubld.) on West and West Central Africa, 15th-17th c.
Each document preceded by a summary (2-4 lines).
Ann. (sparse: mostly textual matters).
Apps.: a few in 1st series (e.g. data on
missionaries).
Indexes (rather poor): general (but mainly names).
- 1965 "Um extraordinário documento quinhentista", *Stvdia* 15: 155-
74.
Trpn. of an extract from the log of the Santa Maria da
Comença, 1522. Cf. the English transn. by A.F.C. Ryder in
Journal of the Historical Society of Nigeria 1 (1959) 294-
321 and the French transn. in MAUNY 1967.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1966-9 *Spiritana monumenta historica, Series Africana: Angola*
(3 vols., Pittsburgh. Pp. xxxii, 720, xxiii, 758, xxiii, 770).
Trpn. of French, Italian, Latin and Portuguese documents on
the Holy Ghost Fathers' Angola mission, 1866-1889 (+ a few
earlier documents).
Each document preceded by a French summary (2-4
lines).
Ann. (sparse).
Index: names.
- 1969 *História do Reino do Congo* (Lisbon. Pp. 93. Also publ. in
Stvdia 27-28 (1969): 431-509).
Trpn. of an anonymous ms. (mid-1620s), now generally
believed to be by Mateus Cardoso (cf. BONTINCK & SEGOVIA
1972).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1970 "Relação da Restauração de Mombaça", *Stvdia* 30-31: 33-55.
Trpn. of a ms. ("R.d.R.d.M., da nova Conquista de Patte, e mais
Reynos daquela Costa desde o Cabo Delgado até ao de
Guardafui") by José Gonçalves da Silveira, a military officer,
1728.
Intrn.: mainly biogr.
Ann.: mainly textual matters.
- 1971 "Embaixada do Congo a Roma em 1514?" *Stvdia* 32: 51-87.
A monograph with an appendix (pp. 79-87): trpn. of 7 Latin
documents, 1512-14.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1972 "Informação do Reino do Congo de Frei Raimundo de Dicomano", *Stvdia* 34: 19-42.
Trpn. of a description of Congo by a missionary who was there, 1792-5. Cf. the French transn. by L.Jadin in *Bulletin des Séances* (Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer, Brussels), 1957.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1979 "Descrição dos Governos dos Ill.^{mos} e Ex.^{mos} Snr.^{es} António de Vasconcellos, e D. Francisco Innocencio de Souza Coutinho", *Stvdia* 41-42: 205-25.
Trpn. of a note by Manuel António Tavares (who was in Angola in the 1760s) with a section from the *Catálogo dos Governadores de Angola* (first publ. 1825) which Brásio attributes to T.
Intrn.
Ann. (sparse): 6 textual points.
- BREDEKAMP, H.C. & HATTINGH, J.L., eds.**
- 1981 *Das Tagebuch und die Briefe von Georg Schmidt, dem ersten Missionar in Südafrika (1737-1744). Dagboek en Briewe van Georg Schmidt. Eerste sendeling in Suid-Afrika (1737-1744)* (Bellville [South Africa]. Pp. 503).
Bilingual (German/Afrikaans) ed. of the papers of a German missionary (Moravian Brethren) among the Khoikhoi. Trpn. by B.Krüger and H.Plüddemann; transn. by J. du P.Boeke.
Intrn.: biogr.; the papers; editorial policy.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: glossary; 6 supplementary documents, 1736-44; Herrnhuter events mentioned by S.
Bibl.
- BRIDGES, Roy C., intr.**
- 1968a J.Lewis Krapf: *Travels, Researches, and Missionary Labours during an Eighteen Years' Residence in Eastern Africa* (London. Pp. 75, li, 566).
Reprint of the transn. (publd. 1860) of K's *Reisen in Ostafrika ausgeführt in den Jahren 1837-55* (1858).
Intrn.: biogr.; historical background; K's scientific contribution; publication history.
Maps: 1 new.
App.: chronological table.
Bibl.: work on or by K.
- #1982 *James Augustus Grant in Africa, 1860-63* (Edinburgh).
Reproduction of 20 watercolours (Lake Victoria, White Nile etc.); G's agreement with J.H.Speke; trpn. of 1 letter and 1 page from G's diary.
Intrn.: biogr.; G's drawings.
Maps: 1 old.
Bibl. (brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

BROOKS, George E., Jr.

- 1960 "A view of Sierra Leone ca. 1815", *Sierra Leone Studies*, N.S. 13: 24-31.
Trpn. of letters by Capt. Samuel Swan, an American merchant trading with West Africa, 1815-18.
Intrn. (brief).
"No pedantic explanatory notes".
- 1962 "The letter book of Captain Edward Harrington", *THSG* 6: 71-7.
Trpn. of a description of Dixcove (Gold Coast) by the master of an American brig, 1840.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (sparse).
- 1968 "A.A.Adee's journal of a visit to Liberia in 1827", *Liberian Studies Journal* 1: 56-72.
Trpn. of extracts from the journal of a U.S. naval surgeon.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (detailed).
- 1970 *Yankee Traders, Old Coasters & African Middlemen* (Boston. Pp. xiv, 370).
Monograph with appendix (pp. 313-43): trpn. of Capt. Samuel Swan's memoranda on the African trade, c. 1810.
- See BENNETT & BROOKS 1965.

BROSWAHAN, L.F.

- 1965 "A fifteenth-century word list", *JWAL* 2: 5.
Transn. from French of a short list of Gold Coast vocabulary collected by Eustache de la Fosse, 1479-80, as publ. in the *Revue Hispanique*, 1897. Cf. List B: HAIR 1966a; DALBY & HAIR 1968.

BROWN, Richard, intr.

- 1971 Thomas Morgan Thomas: *Eleven Years in Central South Africa* (London. Pp. xx, xi, 418).
Facs. of a book (1872) by a LMS missionary to the Matabele (1859-70).
Intrn.: biogr.; the LMS in Central Africa; T's motivation.

BRUNSCHWIG, Henri, ed.

- 1966 *Brazza Explorateur. L'Ogooué 1875-9* (Paris. Pp. 215).
Trpn. of 26 documents written before and during Pierre Savorgnan de Brazza's expedition up the Ogooué, 1874-8 (each preceded by a brief summary), and of B's long report of 30.8.1879.
Intrn.: mainly biographical and narrative; 1 sub-intrn. (describes the ms. of B's report).
Ann.: none for the 26 documents; detailed for B's report (by 6 scholars: Jean Glénisson, Marie-Antoinette Ménier, Gilles Sauter, Roger Sillans, Étienne Taillemite, André Raponda-Walker).
Maps: 1 old.
Index: general.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1972 *Brazza explorateur: les traités makoko, 1880-1882* (Paris. Pp. 299. Edited with the assistance of Georgette LAGARDE and Jan VANSINA).
Trpn. of B's notebooks, his correspondence with the French committee of the International African Association and official documents; refers to the creation of a French colony in Gabon.

Intrn.: the mss.

Ann.

Maps: 1 old.

Index: general.

BUDACK, K.F.R.: see SCHMIDT 1979.

BURKE, E.E., ed.

- 1969 *The Journals of Carl Mauch. His Travels in the Transvaal and Rhodesia, 1869-1872* (Salisbury. Pp. x, 314).
Transn. from the German, transcribed from M's mss. by E. Bernhard.

Intrn.: biogr.; the journals; principles of transn. and editing.

Ann. (sparse): mainly transn. problems, botany, etc.

Apps.: 2 extracts from *Petermanns Mittheilungen*; comments on M's geological and botanical observations, by A.E.Phaup and H.Wild.

Maps: 1 old, 2 new.

Index: mainly names.

Bibl.

- 1974 intr. "Charles Livingstone at the Victoria Falls", *Rhodesiana* 31: 69-73.

Trpn. of a letter written by David L's brother, 1861.

Intrn. (brief).

See NATIONAL ARCHIVES 1962-75.

BUSIA, Kiofil A., intr.

- 1966 Brodie Cruickshank: *Eighteen Years on the Gold Coast of Africa* (2 vols., London. Pp. 345, 335).
Intrn. adds little to the 1853 text (facsimile).

BUTTERFIELD, P.H., ed.

- 1982 *Peace and War on the Frontier, 1828-1835. The Journal of Major William Cox* (Port Elizabeth. Pp. 31).
Trpn. of the journal of a cavalry officer, referring to the eastern frontier of Cape Colony.

Intrn. (and epilogue): biogr.

Ann. (detailed).

Maps: 1 old.

App.: 1 supplementary document, 1835.

- 1983 "A unique document", *AN&N* 25, 8: 268-77.

Trpn. of a copy of a letter from the Prince Imperial, Napoléon Eugène, 1879, referring to the Zulu War.

Intrn. and postscript.

Ann.

Maps: 1 old.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1984a "Observations on the Zulu War, 1879", *AN&N* 26, 1: 4-14.
Trpn. of extracts from the letters of Henry F. Ponsonby.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1984b "Official despatches on the campaign against Sekukuni, November 1879", *AN&N* 26, 3: 99-109.
Trpn. of British military despatches from Baker Russell and Garnet Wolseley.
- 1985a "A private's Frontier War diary, 1851-1852", *AN&N* 26, 5: 163-76.
Trpn. of extracts from the diary of Thomas Scott, referring to South Africa's 8th "frontier war".
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1985b "Disaster at Intombi Spruit, March 1879. Part I: Two contemporary letters", *AN&N* 26, 7: 262-79.
Trpn. of letters from Sergeant Anthony Clarke Booth and Major Charles Tucker, 1879, referring to the Zulu War.
Intrn.
Ann.
Maps: 1 old.
- CAPELA, José, intr.**
1977 Luiz António de Oliveira Mendes: *Memória a respeito dos escravos e tráfico da escravatura entre a costa d'Africa e o Brazil* (Porto. Pp. 91).
Reprint (with modernised orthography) of a memorandum on the slave trade between Africa and Brazil presented to the Real Academia das Ciencias (Lisbon) in 1793 (publd. 1812).
Intrn.: biogr.; summarises recent literature on the 18th c. Portuguese slave trade.
- CARDONA, Giorgio Raimondol, ed.**
1978 Filippo Pigafetta: *Relazione del Reame di Congo* (Milan. Pp. xix, 249).
Reprint of the original of P's description of Kongo (publd. 1591).
Intrn.
Ann. (partly summarising BAL 1963; good on language).
Maps: 1 new.
App.: list of popes and kings of Portugal/Kongo.
Index: general.
Bibl.
- CARREIRA, António**
1969a *As companhias pombalinas de navegação, comércio, e tráfico de escravos entre a costa africana e o nordeste brasileiro* (Lisbon. Pp. 567. Originally publd. as a series of articles in *BCGP*).
Monograph on Portuguese trade between Africa and Brazil. Pp. 291-558 = documents (1676-1793, mainly unpubld., including material on Guinea Bissau, Angola and the Slave Coast).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1969b "Cabo Verde e Guiné e a Companhia do Grão-Pará e Maranhão", BCGP 22: 309-24.
Trpn. of 2 Portuguese documents (1 petition, 1 memorandum) of 1757, referring to trade on the West African coast.
Intrn.
- 1979 *O tráfico português de escravos na costa oriental africana nos começos do século XIX (Estudo de um caso)* (Lisbon. Pp. 135).
Monograph on the Portuguese slave trade on the East African coast, early 19th c.
Apps. (pp. 77-133): trpn. of 30 documents, 1803-26.
- 1983 *Documentos para a historia das Ilhas de Cabo Verde (séculos XVII e XVIII)* (Lisbon. Pp. 306).
Facsimiles and trpn. of 22 Portuguese documents (or extracts from documents) on the Cape Verde Islands and Guinea Bissau.
Intrn.: history of Portuguese activities in Bissau and its vicinity.
Ann. (fairly detailed).
Maps: 4 old.
- 1984 *Os portugueses nos Rios de Guiné 1500-1900* (Lisbon. Pp. 205).
Monograph. Pp. 124-87: trpn. of 34 Portuguese documents on the area between Senegal and Sierra Leone, 1612-1883.
Ann. (very sparse).
Maps: 2 old, 2 new.
Bibl.
- CASADA, James A., ed.
- 1974 "James A. Grant's Cape diary and sketches, 1860", QBSAL 28: 63-74.
Trpn. of extracts from the explorer G's diary kept while staying at the Cape.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1980 R[oualeyn] Gordon Cumming: *A Hunter's Life in South Africa* (Bulawayo. Vol. 1: Pp. xvii, xv, 388).
Facsimile of GC's *Five Years of a Hunter's Life in the Far Interior of South Africa* (1850).
Intrn. (poor).
Bibliographical note (poor).
- CASTEL(H)O(-)BRANCO: see BRANCO 1970.
- CENTRO DE ESTUDOS HISTÓRICOS ULTRAMARINOS: see
NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF RHODESIA 1962-75.
- CHILD, Daphne, ed.
- 1978 *The Zulu War Journal of Colonel Henry Harford, C.B.* (Pietermaritzburg. Reprinted: Hamden, Conn., 1980. Pp. viii, 88).
Trpn., referring to 1879.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (inserted in the text).
Maps: 2 new.
Index: general.
Bibl. (brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1979 *A Merchant Family in Early Natal. Diaries and Letters of Joseph and Marianne Churchill, 1850 to 1880* (Cape Town. Pp. x, 198).
Trpn. of extracts, interspersed with narrative.
Intrn. (brief).
App.: note on currency and mensuration.
Index: general.
- 1980 *Portrait of a Pioneer. The Letters of Sidney Turner from South Africa 1864-1901* (Johannesburg. Pp. xi, 144).
Trpn. of letters of an English settler in Natal, linked by a few narrative passages.
Intrn. (brief): editorial policy; biogr.
Ann. (rather sparse).
Bibl.
- CLARKE, Sonia**
*1984 *Zululand at War 1879. The Conduct of the Anglo-Zulu War* (Houghton [South Africa]. Pp. 300).
Trpn. of mss. from the Brenthurst Library, interspersed with narrative.
Intrn.: the mss.; editorial policy; historical background; writers and recipients of letters.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 4 old, 4 new.
Apps.: list of letters; biographical sketches of 29 British officers.
Index: general.
Bibl.
- CLENDENEN, Gary W., ed.**
1976 "David Livingstone on the Zambezi: Letters to John Washington, 1861-1863", *Munger Africana Library Notes* (Pasadena, Ca.), 6/32 (pp. 89).
Trpn. of 29 (out of 60) letters.
Intrn.: background; the letters; editorial policy.
Ann. (detailed): mainly biogr.
- 1981 intr. William Charles Baldwin: *African Hunting* (Bulawayo. Pp. xiii, x, 451).
Facsimile of *African Hunting and Adventure from Natal to the Zambesi* (1863).
Intrn. (brief) adds little.
- COLLINS, Edmund, intr.**
1964 H.W.Daendels: *Journal and Correspondence, Part One (November 1815 - January 1817)* (mimeo: Institute of African Studies, Legon. Pp. 319).
Provisional transn. (found in the notebooks of J.T.Furley) of extracts from Algemeen Rijksarchief documents. (D was Governor-General of the Netherlands Settlements on the Coast of Guinea).
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (sparse).
Indexes: 1 of places, 1 of untranslated words.

LIST A: EDITIONS

COLLINS, Robert O., intr.

- 1967 Richard F. Burton: *The Nile Basin*; James MacQueen: *Captain Speke's Discovery of the Source of the Nile* (London. Pp. xxxvii, iv, 195).
Facsimile of the 1864 edition.
Intrn.: adequate on B and S; weak on Africa.

COOLHAAS, W.Ph.

- 1962, 1966, "Gegevens over de vestiging aan de Kaap de Goede Hoop uit de
1971, 1972 Generale Missiven", *Historia* 7: 95-105; 11: 191-201; 16: 38-46; 17: 233-43.
Trpn. of extracts from reports to the Dutch East India Company by its Governor-General and Council in India, referring to the Cape, 1651-97.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
1969 "Bericht uit 1610 over de bewoners van Kaapland", *Historia* 14: 275-8.
Trpn. of an extract from the journal of Hendrick Jansz. Craen, referring to inhabitants of the Cape.
Intrn.
Ann.

COPE, R.L., ed.

- *1977 *The Journals of the Rev. T.L.Hodgson: Missionary to the Seleka-Rolong and Griquas 1821-1831* (Johannesburg. Pp. xvi, 434).
Abridged trpn. of the journals of one of the first Methodist missionaries among the Tswana.
Intrn. (good).
Ann.
Apps.: list of Griquas at Boetsap; chronological table.
Maps: 1 new.
Index (good): general.
Bibl. (good).

COQUERY-VIDROVITCH, Catherine

- 1969 *Brazza et la prise de possession du Congo. La Mission de l'Ouest Africain 1883-1885* (Paris. Pp. 502).
Trpn. of archival documents on Pierre Savorgnan de B's expedition of 1883-5 (cf. BRUNSCHWIG 1966, 1972).
Intrn. (good): mainly on historical background.
Ann.: by Otto Gollnhoffer, Georges Mazenot, Herbert Pepper, W.G.L.Randles, Gilles Sautter, Roger Sillans, Jan Vansina.
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

CORDEUR, Basil A. Le: see SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

LIST A: EDITIONS

CORDEUR, Basil Le & SAUNDERS, Christopher, eds.

- *1976 *The Kitchingman Papers. Missionary Letters and Journals, 1817 to 1848, from the Brenthurst Collection Johannesburg* (Pretoria. Pp. 310).
Trpn. of papers of James K, an LMS missionary (South African interior).
Intrn.: biogr.; the LMS; the papers; editorial policy.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 3 new.
Index: general.
Bibl.
- *1981 *The War of the Axe, 1847. Correspondence between the governor of the Cape Colony, Sir Henry Pottinger, and the commander of the British forces at the Cape, Sir George Berkeley, and others* (Johannesburg. Pp. 287).
Trpn. of letters referring to the 7th "Frontier War" (British vs. Xhosa), 1846-7; interspersed with narrative.
Intrn.: the mss.; editorial policy; the war.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 4 old.
Apps.: Xhosa and Gqunukhwebe genealogy; list of documents previously publ.
Index: general.
Bibl.

CORNEVIN, Robert, ed.

- 1972 *Les mémoires de l'Afrique. Des origines à nos jours* (Paris. Pp. 639).
Popular historical anthology of over 1,000 short extracts from publ. works on Africa, lavishly illustrated.
Intrn. (poor): brief sub-intrns. to each chapter and document.
App.: chronological table.
Maps: many (new).
Index: general.

CORTESAO, Armando & NOTA, Avelino Teixeira da

- *1960 *Portvgaliae Monumenta Cartographica* (6 vols., Lisbon. Pp. 900, approximately).
Lavish edition of Portuguese maps and charts, mainly 15th-16th c., including very many African ones. Parallel Portuguese and English text.
Intrn.; sub-intrn. to each volume (brief).
For each map/chart: a description of it; its history; trpn. of toponyms etc.; select bibl.
Indexes (good), = Vol. 6: 1 of cartographers, 1 general.

COSTA, M. Gonçalves da, ed. (with C.F.Beckingham & D.M.Lockhart)

- *1971 Jerónimo Lobo: *Itinerário e outros escritos inéditos* (Barcelos. Pp. xxviii, 832).
Trpn. of the Portuguese ms. of a Jesuit: mainly Ethiopia, also Natal and Angola (1623-36). Cf. BECKINGHAM 1984.

LIST A: EDITIONS

Intrn. (good): biographical data; the ms.; previous editions; editorial principles.
 Ann.
 Apps.: supplementary documents; chronological table.
 Maps: 4 old, 1 new.
 Index: general.
 Bibl. (good).

COUTO, Carlos [Alberto Mendes do]

- 1972 *Os capitães-mores em Angola no século XVIII* (Luanda. Pp. 399).
 Monograph on the Portuguese in 18th c. Angola. The last 90 pp. consist of a trpn. of 9 unpubl. documents (1748-75).
 Index: general.
- 1979 "Para a história da arquivística em Angola. O primeiro inventário documental angolano (3-12-1754)", *Stvdia* 41-42: 227-73.
 Trpn. of the earliest surviving inventory of documents on Angola, by António Álvares da Cunha, 1754.
 Intrn.

See OLIVEIRA 1971.

CRANKSHAW, G.B.

- #1960 "The diary of C.L.Stretch: A critical edition and appraisal", M.A. thesis, Rhodes University.

CUNNISON, Ian, trans.

- 1960 A.C.P.Gamitto: *King Kazembe and the Marave, Cheva, Bisa, Bemba, Lunda, and Other Peoples of Southern Africa. Being the Diary of the Portuguese Expedition to that Potentate in the Years 1831 and 1832* (2 vols., Lisbon. Pp. 208, 228).
 Transn. of António Candido Pedroso G., *O Muata Cazembe e os povos Maraves, Chévas, Muizas, Nuembas, Lundas e outros da Africa austral...* (1854); 2 appendices (word-lists) omitted.
 Intrn. (poor): does not even say whether the diary was publ. in Portuguese.
 Ann.: hardly any.
 Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
 Indexes: 1 of names, 1 of rivers.

CURREY, Ralph M., ed.

- 1968 *Letters and Other Writings of a Natal Sheriff, Thomas Phipson 1815-76* (Cape Town/London. Pp. xxvii, 248).
 Newspaper articles and (trpn.) letters written by a radical English settler in Natal, 1849-76.
 Intrn.: P's English background and his writings.
 Sub-intrn. to each of the 12 sections (each with a chronological table).
 Apps.: notes on persons mentioned; list of letters omitted.
 Maps: 1 old (with 2 new insets).
 Index: general.
 Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

CURTIN, Philip D., ed.

*1967

Africa Remembered: Narratives by West Africans from the Era of the Slave Trade (Madison. Pp. x, 363).
Extracts from 7 18th-19th c. works (some unpubld.), each edited by a different scholar: C on Ayuba Suleiman Diallo and Joseph Wright; G.I.Jones on Olaudah Equiano; Margaret Priestley on Philip Quaque; Ivor Wilks on Salih Bilali, Abu Bakr al-Siddiq and Wargee; H.F.C.Smith, D.M.Last and Gambo Gubio on Ali Eisami Gazirmabe; P.C.Lloyd on Osifekunde; J.F.Ade Ajayi on Samuel Crowther.
Intrn. and sub-intrns. (good).
Ann. (good).
Maps: 16 new.
Index (good): general.

CURTIN, Philip D. with BOULÈGUE, Jean, eds.

1974

"Claude Boucard: Relation de Bambouc", *BIFAN* 36: 246-75.
Trpn. of an account (1729) by a participant in the French attempt to set up a post in Bambuk (Upper Senegal), 1722-31.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 old, 1 new.

CUVELIER, Jean

#1960

"Relation sur le royaume du Congo 1690-1700", *Ngonge Congo* 5: ?-?.
Transn. of the account by a Capuchin missionary to Kongo, Marcellino d'Atri (cf. TOSO 1984).

DAAKU, Kwame Y.

1966

"The basis of Dutch relations with Axim", *GNQ* 8: 19-20.
Transn. of an unpubld. agreement between the Dutch West India Company and the caboceers of Axim (Gold Coast), 1642.

1970

Trade and Politics on the Gold Coast, 1600-1720 (Oxford. Pp. xviii, 219).
App.: transn. of 4 Dutch documents, 1624-57 (including the one in DAAKU & VAN DANTZIG 1966).

DAAKU, Kwame Y. & DANTZIG, Alibert van

1966

"Map of the regions of Gold Coast in Guinea", *GNQ* 9: 14-15.
"Provisional transn." of an unpubld. 1629 Dutch map of the Gold Coast and the accompanying text. (Transcription not wholly reliable.)

DACHS, Anthony J., ed.

1975

Papers of John Mackenzie (Johannesburg. Pp. xvi, 282).
145 letters collected by M's son and 63 documents from English archives (1854-91). M worked for the LMS among the Tswana and helped create the Bechuanaland Protectorate.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann.
Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
Index: names, African terms.
Bibl.: M's publications.

LIST A: EDITIONS

DAGUT, Jenifer: see HOUGHTON & DAGUT 1972.

DALBY, David, intr.

- 1968 Sigismund Wilhelm Koelle: *African Native Literature* (Graz. Pp. xiii, xv, 434).
Facsimile of K's book of Kanuri "proverbs, tales, fables & historical fragments" (1854), with a foreword by J. Lukas.
Intrn. (brief) discusses the book's linguistic, literary and historical value.

See HAIR 1963a.

DALBY, David & HAIR, P.E.H.

- 1964 "'Le langaige de Guynee': A 16th century vocabulary from the Pepper Coast", *African Language Studies* 5: 174-91.
Trpn. of a list of vocabulary in a French ms. compiled in the 1540s, perhaps by Jehan Lamy; offers identifications with modern Kra (southern Liberia).

DANTZIG, Albert Van

- #1976 *Rawlinson Collection Nos. 745-747. A Selection of Letters and Papers Written from Offra and Whydah* (mimeo, Legon).
Trpn. (Slave Coast): cf. List B: DANTZIG 1984; HENIGE 1972.
- 1978 *The Dutch and the Guinea Coast 1674-1742. A Collection of Documents from the General State Archives at The Hague* (Accra. Pp. 375).
Transn. of extracts from 435 documents of the Dutch West India Company.
Intrn. (brief); sub-intrns. (4 chronological sections).
Index: mainly names.

See DAAKU & DANTZIG 1966.

DAVIDSON, J.H., ed.

- 1973 Anthony Trollope: *South Africa* (Cape Town. Pp. 504).
Reprint of T's book (1878).
Intrn.: biogr.; the text; editorial policy.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 3 supplementary documents; T's itinerary; the writing of *South Africa*; South African elements in T's fiction.
Maps: 1 new.
Index: general.

DAVIES, Pieterl N., ed.

- 1976 *Trading in West Africa 1840-1920* (New York. Pp. 209).
Reminiscences (some unpubld.) of merchants (mainly British).
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 old.
Index: general.

LIST A: EDITIONS

DAVIS, Asa J.

1971

"Background to the Zaaga Zab embassy. An Ethiopian diplomatic mission to Portugal (1527-1539)", *Studia* 32: 211-302. Monograph on Portuguese-Ethiopian relations, with trpn. of some Latin documents (sources not clearly indicated), as well as Amharic documents.

DAWE, H.G.: see ROSENTHAL & DAWE 1982.

DEBIEN, Gabriell, ed.

1964

"Journal du docteur Corre en pays sérère (décembre 1876 - janvier 1877)", *BIFAN* 26: 532-600.

Trpn. of a ms. by a Breton naval doctor, Armand C, on his expedition to the Senegal coast to study sleeping sickness.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

1972

"Documents sur la traite (XVII^e-XIX siècles)", *Enquêtes et Documents* (Nantes) 2: 185-226.

Trpn. of 5 unpubld. French documents on the slave trade (1672, 2nd half of 18th c., 1777, 1818, 1844), referring to various parts of the West African coast..

Intrn. (brief); 5 sub-intrns.

Ann. (detailed).

1982

"Le journal de traite de la *Licorne* au Mozambique, 1787-1788", in: *études africaines offertes à Henri Brunshwig* (Paris), 91-116.

Trpn. of the log of a Bordeaux slave ship, written by its captain, Brugevin, including his notes on slaves' ethnic origins and diseases.

Intrn.

Ann.

DEBIEN, Gabriel, DELAFOSSE, Marcel & THILMANS, Guy, eds.

1978

"Journal d'un voyage en Guinée et Cayenne par Jean Barbot", *BIFAN* 40: 235-395.

Trpn. of B's journal of his voyage to West Africa and Cayenne, 1678-9. (Some faults in the trpn. of African words.)

Intrn.

Ann.: good on Europeans and fish, weak on Africa.

DEEMING, Terence J.: see EVANS ET AL. 1969.

DE KOCK, V.J.: see KOCK.

DELAFOSSE, Marcel: see DEBIEN ET AL. 1978.

DELCOURT, André, ed.

*1974

Pierre-Félix-Barthélemy David: *Journal d'un voyage fait en Bambouc en 1744* (Paris. Pp. 303).

Trpn. of an account of a visit to Upper Senegal.

LIST A: EDITIONS

Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 5 supplementary documents.
English summary.
Maps: 4 old, 2 new.
Index (good): general.

DELLAGIACOMA, V.: see HUBER ET AL. 1973.

DESANGES, Jehan

1978 *Recherches sur l'activité des Méditerranéens aux confins de l'Afrique (VI^e siècle avant J.-C. - IV^e siècle après J.-C.) (Rome. Pp. xviii, 486).*
App.: the original Greek and Latin texts on early voyages along the West African coast, with French transn.

DESCHAMPS, Hubert, ed.

1967 *L'Afrique Occidentale en 1818, vue par un explorateur français, Gaspar Théodore Mollien (Paris. Pp. 300).*
Reprint of G. Mollien, *Voyage dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique, aux sources du Sénégal et de la Gambie, fait en 1818, par ordre du gouvernement français (1820).*
Intrn.: mainly narrative.
Ann.: hardly any.
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl. (brief).

DICORATO, Mireille: see JADIN & DICORATO 1974.

DIKE, K.O.: see ITALIAANDER 1970.

DIOP, Abdoulaye-Bara, intr.

1984 Abbé David Boilat: *Esquisses Sénégalaises* (Paris. Pp. 499).
Facsimile of B's book of 1853 (based on his stay in Senegal, 1842-52).
Intrn.
App.: glossary of indigenous terms.

DONZEL, E. van, ed.

*1979 *Foreign Relations of Ethiopia 1642-1700. Documents Relating to the Journeys of Khodja Murad* (Istanbul. Pp. xiii, 305).
Transn. of Dutch and other sources (mainly from Dutch East India Company records).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 old.
Apps.: duration of journeys; the English E.I.C. and Ethiopia; the Armenian bishop Yohannes; imports and exports.
Indexes: 1 general, 1 of ships.
Bibl. (good).

LIST A: EDITIONS

DRASCHER, Wahrhold, intr.

- 1967 Hinrich Lichtenstein: *Reisen im südlichen Afrika in den Jahren 1803, 1804, 1805 und 1806* (2 vols., Stuttgart. Pp. xl, 685, 662).
Facsimile of the 1811 ed. of Martin Hinrich Carl L's book.
Intrn.: biogr.; the book's value; European activities in South Africa.

DUCHÂTEAU, Armand: see HIRSCHBERG & DUCHATEAU 1972.

DUFILL, [Mark] B., ed.

- 1985 [Eduard] [Robert] Flegel: *The Biography of Madugu Mohamman Mai Gashin Baki* (Los Angeles. Pp. 52).
Transn. of the account of a Hausa caravan leader's life, from F's *Lose Blätter aus dem Tagebuche meiner Hausa-Freunde...* (1885).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 new.
App.: summary of interviews at Bakundi on MM's later life, 1976.
Indexes: 1 of persons, 1 of places, 1 of subjects.

DUMINY, A.H., with ADCOCK, L.J.G., eds.

- 1979 *The Reminiscences of Richard Paver* (Cape Town. Pp. viii, 135).
Trpn. of reminiscences of an English settler in the Eastern Cape, 1843-53.
Intrn.: biogr.; the frontier wars; editorial policy.
Ann.
Maps: 3 new.
Index: mainly names.
Bibl. (brief).

DU TOIT, André: see TOIT & GILIOMEE.

EDGECOMBE, D. [Ruth], ed.

- #1968 "The Letters of Hannah Dennison, 1820 Settler, 1820-1847", M.A. thesis, Rhodes University.

EDGECOMBE, Ruth, ed.

- *1982 *Bringing Forth Light. Five Tracts on Bishop Colenso's Zulu Mission* (Pietermaritzburg. Pp. xlvi, 252).
Reprint of 5 lectures/tracts (1854-65) by John William Colenso, first Bishop of Natal.
Intrn. (good): based partly on C's papers.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 new.
Index: general.
Bibliographical note.

LIST A: EDITIONS

EDWARDS, Paul, ed.

- 1967 *Equiano's Travels. His Autobiography: The Interesting Narrative of the Life of Olaudah Equiano or Gustavus Vassa the African* (London. Pp. xviii, 196).
Reprint of E's book, *The Interesting Narrative...* (1789) (abridged: omissions not indicated).
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: E's verses; account of E's appointment as Commissary for Stores, 1786-7.
- 1969 Ottobah Cugoana: *Thoughts and Sentiments on the Evil of Slavery* (London. Pp. xxiii, iv, 148).
Facsimile of a book (1787) by a Fante taken from the Gold Coast to Grenada as a slave (he later went to England).
Intrn.: discusses the book's authorship and history.
Ann.
App.: trpn. of 5 letters written by C in London.

EVANS, Betty Hall: see EVANS ET AL. 1969.

EVANS, David S., DEERING, Terence J., EVANS, Betty H. & GOLDFARB, Stephen, eds.

- *1969 *Herschel at the Cape. Diaries & Correspondence of Sir John Herschel 1834-1838* (Cape Town. Pp. xxxviii, 398).
Trpn. of H's papers on his stay in South Africa.
Intrn.: biogr. on H and his father.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 new.
Index (good): general.
Bibl.

FAGE, [John] D., intr.

- 1967a Archibald Dalziel: *The History of Dahomy, an Inland Kingdom of Africa* (London. Pp. 22, xxxii, 230).
Facsimile (1st ed. = 1793).
Intrn.: D's sources and approach to history.

See WILLIS 1967.

FARIA, Francisco Leite de

- 1966 "Uma relação de Rui de Pina sobre o Congo escrita em 1492", *Stvdia* (Lisbon) 19: 223-303.
Complex study of an Italian ms. (late 15th/early 16th c.) copied by P. Voglienti; it translated a Portuguese report (now lost) on Rui de Sousa's Congo voyage, 1490-92. Faria compares it with Rui de Pina's *Chronica de Dom João III* (1st publ. 1792), which used the same source.
Photos of whole text (without trpn.).
Trpn. of passages which deviate significantly from Pina (with Portuguese transn.).
App.: list of other Italian documents on Portuguese discoveries copied by P. Voglienti.

See LEGUZZANO 1965.

LIST A: EDITIONS

FERGUSON, William T. & IMHLMAN, R.F.M., eds.

1961

Sir John Herschel and Education at the Cape 1838-1840 (Cape Town. Pp. xii, 94).

Trpn. of some of H's papers.

Intrn.: the mss.; biogr.; historical background; education at the Cape.

Ann. (detailed).

Maps: 2 old.

Apps.: 8 biogr. sketches ; the H obelisk; the camera lucida.

Index: general.

Bibl.

FERREIRA: see RITA-FERREIRA

FERREZ, Gilberto

1965

"Diário anônimo de uma viagem às costas d'Africa e às índias Espanholas (1702-1703). O tráfico de escravos no Brasil", *Revista do Instituto Histórico e Geográfico Brasileiro* 267: 3-42.

Transn. of extracts from anon., *Journal d'un voyage sur les costes d'Afrique et aux Indes d'Espagne* (1723), referring partly to Cabinda, 1702-3 (pp. 6-12).

Intrn.

Ann.

FFOLIOTT, Pamela & LIVERSIDGE, Richard

1971

Ludwig Krebs, Cape Naturalist to the King of Prussia 1792-1844 (Cape Town. Pp. xiii, 304).

Biographical study of a German collector who was at the Cape, 1817-44; interspersed with long extracts (transn.) from his papers.

Ann.

Maps: 1 new.

Apps.: biographies of 24 Europeans; list of correspondence; K's collection lists, with modern identifications.

Index: general (including scientific names).

FILESI, Teobaldo

#1968

"Nuove testimonianze sulla missione congolese a Roma del 1608", *Africa* (Rome) 23: 423-69.

1971

"Nazionalismo e religione nel Congo all'inizio del 1700", *Africa* (Rome) 26: 267-303, 463-508, 645-68 (the last section publd. with Vol. 27 in 1972). Also publd. as a book: Rome, 1972 (Pp. 119).

Monograph on the Antonians (Kongo). The last 60 pp. = trpn. of documents by Capuchins - Bernardo da Gallo, Lorenzo da Lucca, Colombano da Bologna, 1705-6, 1711.

Ann.

Index (in the book version): names.

LIST A: EDITIONS

FISHER, Allan G.B. & FISHER, Humphrey J., eds.

- *1972-86 Gustav Nachtigal: *Sahara and Sudan* (4 vols., London. Pp. xix, 460; xv, 540; xx, 519; xxi, 439).
 Transn. of N's German work, *Sahāra und Sūdān* (1879-89). Vol.4
 = edited with Rex S. O'Fahey (ann. on Darfur).
 Intrn. (brief), each volume.
 Ann. (fairly detailed).
 Maps.
 Apps.: glossaries (good), each volume; chapters on
 developments in various areas since N's visit.
 Index (good): general, each volume.

FISHER, Humphrey J., intr.

- 1971 Benjamin Anderson: *Narrative of a Journey to Musardu, the
 Capital of the Western Mandingoes (1870) together with
 Narrative of the Expedition Despatched to Musahdu by the
 Liberian Government under Benjamin J. K. Anderson in 1874
 (1912)* (London. Pp. xxiii, 119, 43).
 Facsimile of A's reports on his 2 expeditions on behalf of
 the Liberian government to Musadugu (today in Guinée).
 Intrn. (good).
 Index: general.

FODOR, István

- 1983 *Introduction to the History of Umbundu. L. Magyar's Records
 [1859] and the Later Sources* (Hamburg. Pp. 327).
 Detailed linguistic study of M's writings on his stay in
 Angola (cf. KUN 1960; List B: FODOR 1977a).
 Intrn.: biographical sketch; comparison of the
 linguistic data with 21 later sources.
 App.: facsimile of 1 chapter from M's *Délafrikai
 Utazásai* (1859).
 Maps: 1 new.
 Portuguese summary.
 Bibl. (good).

FORBES, Vernon] S., ed.

- *1967-8 George Thompson: *Travels and Adventures in Southern Africa*
 (2 vols., Cape Town. Pp. xxxvi, 187; xiv, 277).
 Travelogue (publd. 1827) of an English merchant who settled
 at Cape Town; covers 1823-4.
 Intrns. (good).
 Ann. (detailed).
 Index: general.
 Bibl.
- *1975/77 Anders Sparrman: *A Voyage to the Cape of Good Hope...1772-
 1776* (Cape Town. Pp. 330, 295).
 Revised version (prepared by J. & I. Rudner) of the 1785
 English edition of S's book, *Resa till Goda Hopps-
 Udden...1772-76*, Vol.1 (1783) (S = a Swedish naturalist).

LIST A: EDITIONS

Intrn. (good): biogr.; history of the book; 2
unpubld. letters; money, weights and measures.
Ann. (detailed): includes comparisons with the
Swedish ed.
Maps: 2 new.
Indexes: 1 general, 1 zoological, 1 botanical.
Bibl.

FORBES, Vernon S. & ROURKE, John, eds.

*1980 *Paterson's Cape Travels 1777 to 1779* (Johannesburg. Pp. 202).
Trpn. of a ms. by William Paterson, describing 4 journeys: a
lavish edition, including many of P's paintings.
Intrn. (good): editorial policy; P's life; P as
plant-collector; P's writings and drawings.
Ann. (detailed, based on consulting many scholars).
Apps.: list of P's drawings; current plant names.
Maps: 4 old, 8 new.
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

FOSKETT, Reginald, ed.

1964 *The Zambesi Doctors: David Livingstone's Letters to John Kirk
1858-1872* (Edinburgh. Pp. x, 187).
Trpn. of 64 letters (for K see FOSKETT 1965).
Intrn.
Ann. (sparse).
App.: 3 letters (2 from L, 1 from Agnes L).
Maps: 1 old.
Index: general.

1965 *The Zambesi Journal and Letters of Dr. John Kirk, 1858-63*
(2 vols., Edinburgh. Pp. xxi, 636).
Trpn. of the papers of the botanist/medical officer on
Livingstone's Zambesi expedition.
Intrn.
Ann. (sparse).
Apps.: 5 supplementary documents, 1858-9.
Maps: 1 old.
Indexes: 1 of names, 1 of subjects.
Bibl. (poor).

FOURIE, V.R.: see SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

FRANCONIE, Marc, ed.

1973 Karl Moritz von Beurmann: *Voyages et explorations, 1860-1863.*
Nubie - Soudan - Libye - Fezzan - Lac Tchad - Bornou (St.
Illide. Pp. 190).
Transn. of B's articles (originally publd. in German) on his
travels in the northeastern Sudan and to Bornou.
Intrn. (biogr.) and 4 passages linking the text.
Ann. (sparse).
Apps.: 8 further extracts from B's publications.
Maps: 3 old, 1 new.
Index: names and vernacular terms.
Bibl.: mainly B's publications.

LIST A: EDITIONS

FREEMAN-GRENVILLE, G[reville] S. P.

- 1962a *The Medieval History of the Coast of Tanganyika* (London. Pp. 238).
 Part 2 = a detailed study of the 2 surviving summaries of the lost Chronicle of Kilwa Kisiwani (covering 957-1498) - João de Barros, *Da Asia* (1552) and a 19th c. Arabic document. Transns. in parallel columns.
 Maps: 3 new.
 Index (good): mostly names.
 Bibl.
- 1962b *East African Coast - Select Documents from the 1st to the Earlier 19th Century* (Oxford. Pp. 314).
 Anthology: transn. from Greek, Arabic, Portuguese, Swahili.
 Sub-intrn. for each document.
 Ann.: only bibliographic details.
 Maps: 4 new.
 Index: names.
- 1965 *The French at Kilwa Island. An Episode in 18th-Century East African History* (London. Pp. xiii, 243).
 Transn. of unpubld. French documents (1776-9, 1785) on the project of a Monsieur Morice for a settlement on Kilwa Island.
 Intrn. (good): sources; M and his project; sultans of Kilwa; the kingdom of Kilwa, 18th c.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Apps.: 4 supplementary documents, 1773-5; list of titles, c. 1785.
 Maps: 3 old (edited); 1 new.
 Index: general.
 Bibl.
- *1980 *The Mombasa Rising against the Portuguese, 1631: From Sworn Evidence* (London. Pp. lvii, 166).
 Annotated trpn. of the processus submitted by the Portuguese authorities for the elevation to martyrdom of people killed in the rising. Latin text and English translation on facing pages.
 Intrn. (good).
 Ann. (detailed).
 App.: 7 supplementary documents, 1627-82, 1824.
 Maps: 2 old.
 Indexes: 1 of names, 1 of Latin terms (glossary).
 Bibl.

FRYE, John, ed.

- 1971 *The War of the Axe and the Xosa Bible: The Journal of the Reverend J.W.Appleyard* (Cape Town. Pp. xii, 157).
 Trpn. of the journal of John William A, a Wesleyan missionary on the Cape's eastern frontier (1841-59).
 Intrn. and sub-intrns. (good) to the 5 chapters.
 Ann.
 App.: 1 supplementary document, 1859.
 Maps: 2 new.
 Index: general.
 Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

FYFE, Christopher

- 1964 *Sierra Leone Inheritance* (London. Pp. 352).
 Anthology, supplementing F's *History of Sierra Leone* (1962):
 145 documents from various sources (some unpubld.), mainly
 pre-1900.
 Intrn.; brief sub-intrns. to each document.
 Ann.
 Maps: 3 new.
 Index: names.
- 1977 "A letter from Governor MacCarthy to Thomas Clarkson",
Journal of the Historical Society of Sierra Leone 1: 35-51.
 Trpn. of a letter written in Freetown by Sir Charles M, 1819.
 Intrn.
 Ann.

GANIER, Germaine

- 1968 "Maures et Toucouleurs sur les deux rives du Sénégal. La
 mission de Victor Ballot auprès de Sidi Ely roi", *BIFAN* 30:
 182-226.
 App.: 10 letters from Ballot's papers, 1884 (discussed in the
 text).

GARCIA, José Manuel, ed.

- 1983 *Viagens dos Descobrimentos* (Lisbon. Pp. 298).
 Portuguese sources on late 15th c. voyages of discovery,
 including (pp. 19-144) Africa: M.Behaim/D.Gomes, H.Münzer,
 A.Cadamosto, A.Usodimare.
 Intrn.; 4 sub-intrns. (brief).
 Ann.
 Maps (Africa): several old (illegible), 4 new.
 App.: glossary.
 Bibl. (good).

GASPARRINI LEPORACE: see LEPORACE.

GAULME, François

- 1977 "Un document sur le Ngoyo et ses voisins en 1784: l'*Observa-
 tion sur la navigation et le commerce de la côte d'Angole* du
 comte de Capellis", *Revue française d'Histoire d'Outre-Mer* 64
 No. 236: 350-75.
 Trpn. of an extract from a ms. by Hippolyte de C (1785) on
 an expedition to Cabinda.
 Intrn.: biogr.; the expedition; the text.
 Ann. (detailed).

GAYIBOR, Wilicoué L., ed.

- #1976 *Textes et documents d'histoire de l'ancienne Côte des
 Esclaves (Adlo-Genyi) 1660-1835* (Lomé. Pp. ?).
 9 extracts from Isert (see GAYIBOR 1986) and 8 documents
 from Dutch, English and French archives.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- #1986 Paul E. Isert: *Voyages en Guinée et dans les îles caraïbes en Amérique* (Paris).
Reprint of the 1793 transn. of Isert's book (publd. in German, 1788), referring mainly to the Slave Coast.
Intrn.
Ann.
- GELFAND, Michael, ed.
1968 *Gubulawayo and Beyond: Letters and Journals of the Early Jesuit Missionaries to Zambesia (1879-1887)* (London. Pp. 496).
Apparently based on 19th c. transns. publd. in the Jesuit periodical *Letters and Notices*; G does not state this explicitly. Cf. ROBERTS 1979.
Intrn.; 6 sub-intrns.
Ann.
App.: biographical notes on the Jesuits.
Index: names.
- GERMĀ BAŠĀH, trans.
#1966 *Ityopyā Portugēzōč endāyyuwāt. Ethiopia as the Portuguese saw it. Narrative of the Portuguese embassy to Ethiopia during 1520-1527* (Lisbon. Pp. 407).
Transn. from Portuguese into Amharic of Francisco Álvares, *Verdadera informaçam das terras do Preste Joam* (1540).
- GERMOND, Robert C.
1967 *Chronicles of Basutoland* (Moriija [Lesotho]. Pp. 583).
Narrative of European activities in what is now Lesotho, 1830-1902, interspersed with extracts (transn.) from writings of French Protestant missionaries.
Intrn. (very brief).
Ann.
Maps: 5 old, 1 new.
App.: biographical sketches of missionaries (by Eugène KRUGER).
Index: general.
Bibl. (brief).
- GERRESCH, Claudine
1973 "Jugements du *Moniteur du Sénégal* sur Al-Hājj 'Umar, de 1857 à 1864", *BIFAN* 35: 574-92.
Extracts from the *Moniteur officiel du Sénégal et Dépendances*, showing how the paper sought to discredit Al-Hājj 'Umar Tāl of Futa Toro.
Intrn.
- GIFFARD, A. G.
1981 *The Reminiscences of John Montgomery* (Cape Town. Pp. 202).
Reprint of material publd. in South African newspapers (1857, 1868-70) by an 1820 settler (farmer/journalist).
Intrn.: biogr.; M's writings; editorial policy.
Ann. (fairly detailed).
Apps.: 6 supplementary documents, 1868-78.
Index: names.

LIST A: EDITIONS

GILIONEE, Hermann: see TOIT & GILIONEE 1983.

GIVENS, Willie A., ed.

- 1976 *Selected Works of Dr. Edward Blyden* (Robertsport. Pp. viii, 319).
Essays, speeches, interviews etc. relating mainly to Liberia, 1852-3, 1859-75, 1880-83 and later.
Intrn. (brief).

GLASSWELL, M.E.

- 1969 "Friedrich Bultmann (1812-1887): Missionary in Sierra Leone 1837-1861", *Sierra Leone Bulletin of Religion* 11: 15-30.
Transn. of an address delivered by a German missionary in 1866 (publ. 1929), referring to Sierra Leone, 1837-42.
Intrn.
Ann. (sparse).

GLÉNISSON, Jean: see BRUNSCHWIG 1966.

GOLD, Joel J., ed.

- #1985 Samuel Johnson: *A Voyage to Abyssinia* (Translated from the French (New Haven. Pp. viii, 350)).
Critical ed. of J's influential transn. (1735) of Joachim le Grand's French version (1728) of Jeronimo Lôbo's mid-16h c. Portuguese account (cf. BECKINGHAM 1984; COSTA 1971) and of some other material on Ethiopia (late 17th - early 18th c.). Shows how J amended and curtailed the French text while rendering it more readable.

GOLDFARB, Stephen: see EVANS ET AL. 1969.

GOLLNHOFFER, Otto: see COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969.

GOMA-FOUTOU, Célestin, intr.

- 1984 *Conférences et lettres de P. Savorgnan de Brazza sur les trois explorations dans l'ouest africain de 1875 à 1886*, ed. Napoléon Ney (Brazzaville/Heidelberg. Pp. xxii, 463).
Facs. of Ney's book (1887). Cf. BRUNSCHWIG 1966, 1972; COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969.
Intrn. discusses what the book reveals about B's motives and attitude to Africa.

GONÇALVES, António da Silva

- 1969 "Camões e Moçambique", *Monumenta* 5: 23-7.
Discusses references to Mozambique in Luís de C's poetry, quoting 1 poem (1561) *in toto* and extracts from others. Cf. List B: GARCIA 1969.

LIST A: EDITIONS

GORDON, Ruth E.

- 1970 *Dear Louisa. History of a Pioneer Family in Natal 1850-1888* (Cape Town. Pp. xii, 280).
Trpn. of letters from Ellen McLeod (in Natal) to her sister in England; interspersed with narrative.
Ann. (sparse).
Maps: 2 old.
App.: 5 genealogical tables.
Index: names.

GORDON, Ruth E. & TALBOT, Cilivel J., eds.

- 1983 *From Dias to Vorster. Source Material on South African History 1488-1975* (Goodwood. Pp. 464).
Anthology of documents on white South African history, mostly preceded by short sub-intrns.
Index: names.
Bibl.

GORDON-BROWN, Alfred, ed.

- #1967 W.J.Burchell: *Travels in the Interior of Southern Africa* (Cape Town).
Facsimile of B's book (1822-4). Inferior to the reprint ed. by I.Schapera (1953).
1970 *James Ewart's Journal, Covering his Stay at the Cape of Good Hope (1811-1814) & his Part in the Expedition to Florida and New Orleans* (Cape Town. Pp. xii, 137).
Trpn. of ms. by a Scottish officer. Pp. 12-96 = on the Cape.
Intrn.: biogr.; the ms.; the illustrations.
Index: general.

GRAY, Sir John

- 1961-8 "The diaries of Emin Pasha - Extracts", *Uganda Journal* 25-32.
Transn. of extracts from F. Stuhlmann, *Die Tagebücher von Emin Pasha* (1916-27), covering the visits of E.P (= Eduard Schnitzer) to Buganda and Bunyoro (1876-7) and his contacts with the Uganda region up to 1889.
Intrns.
Ann.
1962 "The French at Kilwa in 1797", *Tanganyika Notes & Records* 58-59: 172-3.
Reprint of a French transn. by P. Bonnefoy (1798, publd. 1828) of 2 Arabic letters (1797).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
1964a "Ernest Linant de Bellefonds", *Uganda Journal* 28: 31-54.
Transn. of extracts from L's journal and reports on the Uganda area, publd. in *Bulletin de la Société Khédiviale de Géographie*, 1876-7.
1964b "A French account of Kilwa at the end of the 18th century", *Tanganyika Notes & Records* 62-3: 224-5.
Transn. of extracts from P. Blancard, *Manuel du Commerce des Indes Orientales et de la Chine* (1806). Cf. FREEMAN-GRENVILLE 1965.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1966 "The correspondence of Dallington Maftaa", *Uganda Journal* 30: 13-24.
Reprints 25 letters (1875-80) by an African who had accompanied H. Stanley in 1874, including some re-translated from French/German into English (the English originals being lost).
Intrn.
Ann.
- GREINDL, Léopold**
#1977 "Les diaires des missionnaires d'Afrique. Source inédit pour l'histoire de l'est de Zaïre", *Likundoli* (Série B), Archives et Documents 5, 1: 1-7.
- GUBIO, Gambo**: see CURTIN 1967.
- GUERREIRO, Alcântara**
1960 "Inquérito em Moçambique no ano de 1573", *Stvdia* 6: 7-18.
Trpn. of a ms. written on the orders of Francisco Barreto by António Carneiro, on Monomotapa etc. (cf. NATIONAL ARCHIVES 1962-75 Vol. 8 pp. 229-47, which gives an English transn. as well as a trpn.).
Intrn.
- GUGELBERGER, George M., ed.**
#1984 *Nama/Namibia: Diary and Letters of Nama Chief Hendrik Witbooi, 1884-1894* (Boston. Pp. 10, 131).
Transn. of a German transn. (!), publ. in 1929 (cf. REINHARD 1982), of a letterbook written by a Khowsin chief in Cape Dutch.
- GUSSENBAUER, Herbert, ed.**
n.d.(1984) Georg Schweinfurth: *Im Herzen von Afrika 1868-1871* (Stuttgart. Pp. 356).
Abridged version of S's book describing his travels in Central Africa: it is unclear whether G used the 1st ed. (1874: over 1200 pp.) or the 2nd (1878: 500 pp.)
Intrn.: mainly narrative.
Glossary: mainly words one could find in any good dictionary.
- HAIR, Paul E.H.**
1961 "An Ijebu man in Paris, 1839", *Nigeria* 68: 79-82.
Transn. of extracts from an account of Yoruba society and language derived from Osifekunde (see CURTIN 1967) and publ. by M. d'Azevac in *Mémoires de la Société Ethnologique* (1845). Identifies ethno- and toponyms.
1963a intr. S.W.Koelle: *Polyglotta Africana* (Freetown. Pp. xix, 188).
Facsimile of K's collection of linguistic material among liberated slaves in Sierra Leone Colony (publ. 1854).
Intrn.: African language study at Freetown before K; K at Freetown; K and the *Polyglotta*; K after Freetown.
Index (by David DALBY): English words in the text.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1967a "Freetown abused, 1809", *Durham University Journal* 59: 152-60.
Reprints and discusses extracts from *The African Herald*, a Freetown newspaper.
- 1968 intr. S.W.Koelle: *Outlines of a Grammar of the Vei Language* (1854) (Farnborough. Pp. vi, 256).
Intrn.: the Vai language; its history; K and Vai.
Bibl.
- 1969a "Some French sources on Upper Guinea 1540-1575", *BIFAN* 31: 1030-34.
Text of a letter from Jean Bontemps, 1566 (publd. 1881); discusses André Thevet, *La cosmographie universelle* (1575).
- 1971 "Early sources on religion and social values in the Sierra Leone region: (1) Cadamosto 1463", *Sierra Leone Bulletin of Religion* 11: 51-64 (= 1971 for 1969).
A more literal transn. of the Sierra Leone section of C's account than that publd. by G.R.Crone, 1937; gives crucial terms in the original Italian.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1974a "Barbot, Dapper, Davity: A critique of sources on Sierra Leone and Cape Mount", *HA* 1: 25-54.
Examines inter-relationships between the works of these 3 authors (17th - early 18th c.), tracing a passage in Barbot (1732) back through numerous intermediaries to Almada (1594/6).
- 1974b "Early sources on religion and social values in the Sierra Leone region: (2) Eustache de la Fosse 1480", *ARB* 4: 49-54.
Transn. of the Sierra Leone section of an account first publd. in the *Revue Hispanique*, 1897.
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1976 "Some minor sources for Guinea, 1519-1559: Enciso and Alfonse/Fonteneau", *HA* 3: 19-46.
Complex variorum study (in transn.; some phrases given in the original French) of material on the West African coast in Martin Fernández de Enciso, *Suma de Geografia* (1519), Jean Alfonse (alias F), *Les voyages aventuroux* (1559) and JA's ms. "Cosmographie" (c. 1544-5, publd. 1904).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1981a *Sierra Leone and the English in 1607. Extracts from the Unpublished Journals of the Keeling Voyage to the East Indies* (Freetown: Institute of African Studies, University of Sierra Leone, Occasional Paper No. 4. Pp. 60).
Trpn. of 3 mss.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
App.: the abbreviated version of William Keeling's journal publd. by Samuel Purchas (1625).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1982 *André de Faro's Missionary Journey to Sierra Leone in 1663-1664* (Freetown: Institute of African Studies, University of Sierra Leone, Occasional Paper No. 5. Pp. 75).
Transn. of the 1664 account of a Portuguese Franciscan (first publ., 1945), slightly abbreviated.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 3 new.
- 1985 Francisco de Lemos Coelho: *Description of the Coast of Guinea (1684)*. Vol. I: Introduction and English translation (Issued for circulation to scholars from the Department of History, University of Liverpool. Pp. xxi, 183).
Transn. from an 18th c. ms. copy of a Portuguese ms. written in 1684 (publ. 1953).
Analysis of chapters (sub-titles of paragraphs).
Intrn.: biogr.; LC's account; editorial policy.
Apps.: glossary (brief); key for comparing transn. and text.
Ann.: to follow in Vol. 2.
- ARB Series of articles entitled "Sources on Early Sierra Leone", publ. in the *Africana Research Bulletin* (Freetown: Institute of African Studies, University of Sierra Leone), each consisting of an intrn. (generally annotated), transn. and ann.:
1. Beaulieu 1619 (ARB 4: 1974).
2. [Francisco d'Andrade 1582, [Dierick] Ruiters 1623, [Francisco Pirez del Carvalho 1634 (ARB 5: 1974).
3. [Alonso del Sandoval 1627 (ARB 5: 1975).
4. [Dierick] Ruiters 1623 (ARB 5: 1975).
5-7. [Baltasar] Barreira 1606-7 (ARB 5-6: 1975-6).
8. [Bartolomeu] André 1606 (ARB 6: 1976).
9. [Baltasar] Barreira 1606 (ARB 7: 1977).
10. [Willem C.] Schouten and [Jacob] Le Maire 1615 (ARB 7: 1977).
11. (with A. Jones): [Samuel] Brun 1624 (ARB 7: 1977).
12. The *livro* of the 'Santiago' (ARB 8: 1977).
13. [Balthasar] Barreira 1607-8 (ARB 8: 1978).
14. English accounts, 1582 (ARB 9: 1978).
15. [Luis dell] Marmol [Caravajal] 1573 (ARB 15: 1979).
16. Jesuit views, 1609 (ARB 10: 1980).
17. [Manuel] Álvares 1611 (ARB 11: 1981).
18. [Jean] Barbot 1678 (ARB 11: 1981).
19. [Baltasar] Barreira 1607-8 (ARB 12: 1983).
20. (with A. Jones) [Otto] von der Groeben 1682 (ARB 13: 1984).
21. [Francis] Drake, [Thomas] Cavendish, [George, Earl of] Cumberland (ARB 13: 1984).

See MOTA 1977.

LIST A: EDITIONS

HAIR, P.E.H., MOTA, A.Teixeira da, & BOULÈGUE, J., eds.

- 1984 *An Interim Edition of André Alvares de Almada's Tratado breve dos Rios de Guiné* c. 1594 (mimeo, issued personally from Department of History, University of Liverpool. 2 vols.: Pp. 190, 224).
Transn. of A's ms. (1st publ. as a separate account by a named author, 1733).
Ann. (detailed).

HALLETT, Robin, ed.

- 1964 *Records of the African Association 1788-1831* (London. Pp. viii, 318).
Includes much material (mostly unpubld.) on Senegambia and the western/central Sudan.
Intrn. (good); 18 sub-intrns.
Ann. (sparse).
Apps: Sir Joseph Banks' correspondence on Africa; biographical notes on AA members; extracts from 9 sources on "Houssa"; list of AA publications.
Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
Index: general.
Bibl. (brief).
- 1965 *The Niger Journal of Richard and John Lander* (London. Pp. ix, 317).
Abridged edition (ca. 60%) of R.Lander, *Journal of an Expedition to Explore...the Niger* (1832). Omissions not indicated.
Intrn. (good); epilogue.
Ann. (sparse).
Apps.: RL's instructions; the Ls' equipment.
Indexes (good): 1 of places (gazetteer), 1 general.
Bibl.
- 1967 *Proceedings of the Association for Promoting the Discovery of the Interior Parts of Africa* (2 vols., London. Pp. vii, 565, 424).
Intrn. (brief).

HAMMOND-TOOKE, W.D., ed.

- 1972 *The Journal of William Shaw* (Cape Town. Pp. 220).
Trpn. of the journal of a chaplain/missionary in the eastern Cape, 1820-29.
Intrn.: biogr.; the journal.
Ann. (fairly detailed).
Maps: 1 new.
Index: general.

HARGREAVES, J[ohn] D.

- 1969 *France and West Africa. An Anthology of Historical Documents* (London. Pp. 278).
Transn. of 58 French documents (some unpubld.) on West Africa, 1488-1961.
Intrn. (brief); sub-intrn. to each document.
Ann. (sparse).
Index: general (rather brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

HARGREAVES, John D. & BACKETT, E. Maurice, intr.

1969

Thomas Winterbottom: *An Account of the Native Africans in the Neighbourhood of Sierra Leone* (London. 2 vols. Pp. xxiv, xiv, 384, 294).

Facsimile of W's book (1803).

Intrn.: biogr.; the Sierra Leone Company; W's views on African medicine.

HARRIS, Sheldon H.

1962

"An American's impressions of Sierra Leone in 1811", *Journal of Negro History* 47, 1: 35-41.

Trpn. of Capt. Paul Cuffe(e)'s 2 letters to William Allen from Freetown, 1811.

HATTINGH, J.L.: see BREDEKAMP & HATTINGH 1981.

"H.B.": see ANONYMOUS 1984.

HEATON, J.R.

1976

"The Cape Colony through the eyes of an army surgeon, 1843-46", *AN&N* 22, 4: 135-50.

Trpn. of letters of W.N.Irwin.

Intrn. and postscript (both brief).

HEESE, H.F.

1983

"De inwoners van Kaapstad in 1800", *Kronos. Mededeling van die Wes-Kaaplandse Instituut vir Historiese Navorsing* (Bellville [South Africa]) 7: 42-61.

Trpn. of a list of "coloured" inhabitants of Cape Town, 1800. Cf. ROSENTHAL 1969.

Intrn.

Maps: 1 old (redrawn).

HEINTZE, Beatrix

*1985

Fontes para a história de Angola do século XVII. I: Memórias, relações e outros manuscritos da Colectânea Documental de Fernão de Sousa (1622-1635) (Stuttgart. Pp. xv, 419).

Trpn. (in collaboration with Maria Adélia de Carvalho Mendes) of 44 Portuguese documents on early 17th c. Angola.

Intrn. (good): historical background; biogr. (with 3 family trees); the documents; editorial policy.

Ann. (detailed).

Apps.: biographies of 115 Europeans; glossary of African words; lists of rulers etc.; chronological table; currency, weights and measures.

Maps: 3 old (edited), 2 new.

Index: names.

Bibl. (good).

HEWIGE, David

1974

"Komenda fort in 1778: Commentary on a document", *GNQ* 15: 241-5.

Trpn. and discussion of instructions left by a British agent at Komenda (Gold Coast) to his successor.

LIST A: EDITIONS

HENZE, Dietmar, intr.

1967 Gustav Nachtigal: *Sahara und Sudan* (3 vols., Graz. Pp. xix, xxii, 748; xxiv, 790; xxii, 548).
Facsimile of the 1879-89 ed., with little added (unlike FISHER & FISHER 1972-86).

Intrn.: history of exploration; biogr.; N's contribution.

Bibl.

1978 Carl Claus von der Decken: *Reisen in Ost-Afrika in den Jahren 1859 bis 1865*, ed. Otto Kersten (2 vols., Graz. Pp. viii, xx, 336; xvi, 454).
Facsimile of 1st 2 vols. of K's 6-vol. ed. (1869-79) of the results of D's expedition.

Intrn. (brief): biogr.

HERMAN, Louis & KIRBY, P.R., eds.

1970 Nathaniel Isaacs: *Travels and Adventures in Eastern Africa* (Cape Town. Pp. xix, xxi, 349).
Revised version of the 1936-7 ed. (by L.Herman) of I's book on Natal (1836).

Intrn.: biogr.

Ann.

App.: note on Zulu witchcraft.

Index: general.

HEYNINGEN, Elizabeth: see BEAN & HEYNINGEN 1983.

HILL, Richard, ed.

*1970 *On the Frontiers of Islam. Two Manuscripts concerning the Sudan under Turco-Egyptian Rule, 1822-1845* (London. Pp. xxx, 234).

Transn. of an Italian chronicle of the first 18 years of Turkish rule in the Sudan and of the diary of a French visitor, 1837-40.

Intrn. (good).

Ann. (detailed).

Maps: 1 new.

Index (good): general.

*1984 *The Sudan Memoirs of Carl Christian Giegler Pasha 1873-1883* (London. Pp. xxxii, 231).

Transn. by Thirza Küpper from the ms. of a German who worked as a telegraph engineer in the Sudan, 1873-83.

Intrn.; biographical foreword by GP's great-granddaughter.

Ann. (detailed).

Maps: 2 old, 1 new.

Index: personal names.

See TONIOLO & HILL 1975.

HINCHCLIFF, Peter, ed.

#1971 *The Journal of John Ayliff* (Cape Town).

Trpn. of a mid-19th c. journal, referring to the eastern Cape.

LIST A: EDITIONS

HIRSCHBERG, Walter, ed.

- 1962 *Monumenta Ethnographica, I: Schwarzafrica* (Graz. Pp. 84).
269 large plates of photographed pages from early works
containing ethnographic material on Black Africa, together
with a commentary (not very illuminating) and bibl.
- 1969 Samuel Brun: *Schiffarten in etliche neue Länder und Insulen*
(Graz. Pp. xxxi, 136).
Intrn. (poor).
Bibl.

HIRSCHBERG, [Walter] & DUCHATEAU, Armand

- 1972 "Die Glaubensvorstellungen in Sierra Leone um 1500", *WEB* 4:
3-36.
Portuguese text (as publd. in 1940), German transn. (based
largely but not entirely on that of F.Kunstmann, 1856) and
discussion of Valentim Fernandes' description of Sierra
Leone.
Ann. (detailed).

HODGKIN, Thomas

- 1960[1975?] *Nigerian Perspectives* (London. Pp. xix, 340. 2nd ed.,
considerably revised, pp. xvi, 432).
Anthology of Nigerian history from c. 120 publ. sources.
Intrn. (good).
Ann.
Maps: 2 new.
Index: names.
Bibl. (2nd ed.: good).

HODGSON, Janet

- 1980 *Ntsikana's 'Great Hymn'. A Xhosa Expression of Christianity*
in the Early 19th Century Eastern Cape (Cape Town. Pp. iv,
116).
An exegesis of the hymn, first written down in the early
1820s and publd. with an English transn. in 1827.
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl.

HOLT, Basil

- 1965 "The War of the Axe: As experienced by John Brownlee and
others", *AN&N* 16, 8: 328-32.
Trpn. of extracts from letters by missionaries in South
Africa, 1846, strung together by narrative.

HOPKINS, A[ntony] G., intr.

- 1967 John Witford: *Trading Life in Western and Central Africa*
(London. Pp. xxii, 335).
Facsimile of 1st ed. (1877).
Intrn.

LIST A: EDITIONS

HOPPE, Fritz

1965

Portugiesisch-Ostafrika in der Zeit des Marquês de Pombal (1750-1777) (Berlin. 358).

Monograph on Portuguese East Africa (later published in Portuguese: *África oriental no tempo do Marquês de Pombal (1750-1777)*, Lisbon, 1970). Pp. 217-48: trpn. of 6 documents, 1751-69.

Maps: 1 new.

Index: general.

HOUGHTON, D. Hobart & DAGUT, Jenifer

1972

Source Material on the South African Economy 1860-1970, Vol. 1 (1860-1899) (Cape Town. Pp. xxii, 371).

Anthology of brief extracts, mainly from publ. sources.

Intrn. + 2 sub-intrns. (+ shorter sub-intrns.).

Index: general.

Bibl.

HUBER, O. & DELLAGIACOMA, V. et al., eds.

*1973

Francesco [=Franz] Morlang: *Missione in Africa Centrale: Diario 1855-1863* (Bologna. Pp. xxxii, 426).

Transn. of virtually the whole ms. of an Austrian missionary to the Sudan, 1855-63.

Intrn.: the ms. and its value; the mission.

Sub-intrns.: each section (= year) preceded by a brief summary.

Ann. (detailed) in collaboration with G.Vantin, A.Nebl and L.Bano.

Apps.: extracts from other works; chronological table; glossary of local terms.

Maps: 4 new.

Index: names.

Bibl.

HUNTINGFORD, Georgel W.B., ed.

1980

The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea (London. Pp. xiv, 225).

Transn. of a Greek work which deals i.a. with the East African coast, and of Agatharkhides' work on the same subject.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

Apps. (6): topography; imports and exports; ethnology and history; shipping; elephant-hunting; the mountain of the moon.

Maps: 11 new.

Indexes (good): 1 of places, tribes, persons; 1 of Greek words; 1 of trade-goods; 1 general.

Bibl.

See BECKINGHAM & HUNTINGFORD 1961.

LIST A: EDITIONS

IMMELMAN, R.F.M.

- 1969 "A visit to Cape Town in 1853. The journal of George Frederick Belcher", *QBSAL* 23: 122-44.
Trpn. of an extract from a journal kept on a voyage to Australia.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
See FERGUSON & IMMELMAN 1961.

IRVIN, Graham, trans.

- 1962 *Huydecoper's Diary: Journey from Elmina to Kumasi, 28th April 1816 - 18th May 1817* (Legon. Pp. 90).
Diary of Willem Huydecoper, envoy of the Dutch Governor-General on the Gold Coast, Daendels, to Kumase; translated from the Dutch ms.
No intrn. or ann.

ITALIAANDER, Rolf, ed.

- 1964 Olfert Dapper: *Umbständliche und eigentliche Beschreibung von Africa Anno 1668* (Stuttgart. Pp. 378, xxiii).
Good example of how not to edit: one has the impression one is being offered the 1670 German transn. of D's important work, yet in fact Italiaander has arbitrarily selected extracts, without even indicating which parts of Africa they refer to. Only 1 virtue: non-Gothic script.
Postscript: uninformative.
- 1970 *Heinrich Barth. Er schloß uns einen Weltteil auf. Unveröffentlichte Briefe und Zeichnungen des großen Afrikaforschers* (Bad Kreuznach. Pp. 216).
Trpn. of letters from and to B, 1839-65, and of some mentioning him.
Intrn.: biogr.; + note by K.O.Dike on B and the exploration of Africa.
Ann. (sparse).
Index: names.
- 1980 Heinrich Barth: *Im Sattel durch Nord- und Zentralafrika. Reisen und Entdeckungen in den Jahren 1849-1855* (Wiesbaden. Pp. 403).
Abridged ed. of B's *Reisen und Entdeckungen in Nord- und Zentralafrika...* (1855-8); omissions not indicated.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (sparse).
App.: B's family.
Index: names.
Bibl.: B's writings (as listed in 1866).

JAARSVELD, [Floris] A. Van, ed.

- 1972 *Honderd basiese dokumente by die studie van die Suid-Afrikaanse geskiedenis 1648-1961* (Goodwood. Pp. 303).
Anthology of 100 documents for Afrikaner students, on the history of their ancestors.

LIST A: EDITIONS

JACOBSON, Dan, intr.

- 1971 Olive Schreiner: *The Story of an African Farm* (Harmonds-worth. Pp. 301).
Reprint of a novel (1883) which sheds light on South Africa's past.
Intrn.

JADIN, Louis

- 1961 "Le Congo et la secte des Antoniens. Restauration du royaume sous Pedro IV et la 'sainte Antoine' congolaise (1694-1718)", *BIHBR* 33: 411-615.
Monograph on the political and religious situation in Congo, c.1700, followed by a transn. of 30 documents (1705-19) from the Vatican archives, each preceded by a summary.
Maps: 1 new.
Index (good): names.
- 1963 "Aperçu de la situation du Congo et rite d'élection des rois en 1775, d'après le P. Cherubino da Savona, missionnaire au Congo de 1759 à 1774", *BIHBR* 35: 347-419.
Transn. of 2 unpubld. documents written by CdS (a Capuchin), 1775 (for the Italian text see TOSO 1974, 1976) and 1 document by Rosario del Parco, 1760.
Intrn.; 1 sub-intrn.
Ann.
Index (good): names and African words.
- 1964 "Le clergé séculier et les Capucins du Congo et d'Angola aux XVI^e et XVII^e siècles. Conflits de juridiction, 1700-1726", *BIHBR* 36: 185-483.
Transn. of ca. 110 documents, mainly Italian and unpubld.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (sparse).
Index (good): mainly names and African words.
- *1966 "Rivalités luso-néerlandaises au Soho, Congo, 1600-1675. Tentatives missionnaires des récollets flamands et tribulations des capucins italiens 1670-1675", *BIHBR* 37: 137-359.
Transn. of 71 Portuguese/Dutch/Italian documents on Kongo, mostly unpubld., 1641-3, 1671-7.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 new.
Index (good): mainly names and African words.
- 1967 "Pero Tavares, missionnaire jésuite, ses travaux apostoliques au Congo et en Angola, 1629-1635", *BIHBR* 38: 271-401.
Transn. of 5 Portuguese documents (2 = unpubld.).
Intrn.: mainly biogr., based on the documents.
Ann. (sparse).
Index (good): names.
- *1968 "Relations sur le Congo et l'Angola tirées des archives de la Compagnie de Jésus 1621-1631", *BIHBR* 39: 333-454.
Transn. of 6 long Portuguese/Latin documents (2 = unpubld.).
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Index (good): mainly names and African words.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- #1970 "Andrea da Pavia au Congo, à Lisbonne, à Madère. Journal d'un missionnaire capucin, 1685-1702", *BIHBR* 41: 375-592.
Transn. of the ms. journal of a Capuchin missionary, composed after his return from Kongo to Italy (1692-3) on the basis of notes made from 1685 to 1692.
Intrn.: the ms.; critical evaluation; biogr.
Ann.
Apps.: 42 supplementary documents, 1671-1701 (annotated).
Index (good): mainly names and African terms; gives additional information for many entries.
- 1975 *L'ancien Congo et l'Angola 1639-1655, d'après les archives romaines, portugaises, néerlandaises et espagnoles* (3 vols., Brussels. Pp. xl, 1687).
Transn. of 859 Italian/Portuguese/Dutch/Spanish documents (some unpubld.). NB: The backbone gives the dates as "1639-1645" (a misprint).
Intrn. (good).
Ann.
Maps: 1 new.
Index (good): general.
Bibl.
- JADIN, Louis & DICORATO, Mireille, eds.**
1974 *Correspondance de Dom Afonso, roi du Congo 1506-1543* (Brussels. Pp. 245).
Transn. of 85 Portuguese/Latin documents (some unpubld.), each preceded by a summary.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
App.: 2nd version of 1 document.
Index (good): general.
- JARDINE, R.V.:** see SCHWAR & JARDINE 1975.
- JENSON, John R., ed.**
1973 *Journal and Letter Book of Nicholas Buckeridge, 1651-1654* (Minneapolis. Pp. vi, 104).
Trpn. of mss. referring to 2 East India Company voyages - B's to the Swahili coast in 1653 and Michael Ashmore's to Mombasa in 1647, with some material on coast cities.
Intrn.: editorial policy; historical background; biogr.; the ms.
Ann. (detailed, but best on Asia).
Apps.: 2 supplementary documents, 1652.
Maps: 2 new.
Index: general.
- JOHNSON, Marion**
ca. 1965 *Salaga Papers* (Legon. 2 vols.: Pp. 258, 45).
Collection of documents on Salaga (N.Ghana), mainly 19th c., including some transns. from German/French.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1968 "M. Bonnat on the Volta", *GNQ* 10: 4-17.
Transn. of extracts from the diary of Marie-Joseph B, a French trader, describing his journey to the R.Volta, 1875 (publd. in *L'Explorateur*). Linked by narrative.
- 1971 "Ashanti, Juaben and M. Bonnat", *THSG* 12: 17-41.
Extracts from correspondence publd. in the British Government's *Blue Books*, concerning the captivity of B (see JOHNSON 1968) in Asante, 1869-73. Linked by narrative.
- 1978 "Bullfinch Lambe and the Emperor of Pawpaw: A footnote to Agaja and the slave trade", *HA* 5: 345-50.
Trpn. and discussion of a draft "representation" of 1731, throwing light on references to L (Slave Coast) in the books of John Atkins (1735) and William Snelgrave (1734).
- JOHNSTON, Hugh] A.S. & HUFFETT, David] J.M., eds.**
1974 *Denham in Bornu. An Account of the Exploration of Bornu between 1823 and 1825 by Major Dixon Denham, Dr. Oudney and Commander Hugh Clapperton and of their Dealings with Sheik Muhammad El Amin El Kanemi* (New York. Pp. 266).
Mainly extracts from D's journal (publd. 1826), linked by narrative etc. Ignores the scholarly ed. by BOVILL (1966).
Intrn.
Ann. (sparse).
Maps: 2 old.
- JONES, Adam**
*1983 *German Sources for West African History 1599-1669* (Wiesbaden. Pp. 418).
Transn. of extracts from the works of Johann von Lübeling, Andreas Ulsheimer, Samuel Brun, Michael Hemmersam, Wilhelm Müller and Hans Jacob Zur Eich, and original texts of L, U, H and ZE.
Intrn.; 6 sub-intrns.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: analysis of M's 'Fetu' vocabulary; weights and measures; chronological table.
Maps: 1 old (edited), 6 new.
Index: general.
Bibl.
- *1985 *Brandenburg Sources for West African History 1680-1700* (Stuttgart. Pp. 349).
Transn. and original text of 91 Dutch/German documents on the Brandenburg African Company (Gold Coast, Whydah etc.): 2 = publd. (Otto von der Groeben, Johann Oettinger), others = trpn.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: commandants; glossary; chronological table.
Maps: 1 old (edited), 6 new.
Indexes: 1 general, 1 of persons, 1 of ships.
- See HAIR (ARB series).

LIST A: EDITIONS

JONES, Gwilym I., intr.

- 1970 Hope Masterton Waddell: *Twenty-Nine Years in the West Indies and Central Africa. A Review of Missionary Work and Adventure 1829-1858* (London. Pp. xxiii, xiv, 681).
Facsimile of W's book (1863); refers partly to S.E.Nigeria.
Intrn.: biogr.; Efik society and history.
Bibl. (brief).

See CURTIN 1967.

JONES-QUARTBY, K.A.B., intr.

- 1968 *Royal Gold Coast Gazette* (East Ardsley: microfilm).
Covers 2 April 1822 - 14 February 1824.
Intrn. (useful).

JOPP, Werner, ed.

- 1979 *Unter Hottentotten 1705-1713. Die Aufzeichnungen von Peter Kolb* (Tübingen. Pp. 304).
Reprint of K's *Capvt Bonae Spei Hodiernum...* (1719).
Intrn.

JOUBERT, D.C.: see SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

KALOUS, Milan

- 1974 *Cannibals and Tongo Players of Sierra Leone* (Auckland. Pp. x, 320).
Trpn. of 315 extracts from archival sources, referring mainly to southwestern Sierra Leone. A few = from the 1870s/1880s.
Intrn. (brief).
Index: general.

KATZ, William Loren, intr.

- 1968 Brantz Mayer: *Captain Canot, An African Slaver* (New York. Pp. xvii, 448).
Facsimile of M's *Captain Canot; or, Twenty Years of an African Slaver* (1854) - rewritten memoirs of Theodore Canot.
Intrn. (brief) adds virtually nothing.

KRA, R[ay] A.

- 1976 "A provisional translation of two Danish documents on the Asante expedition of 1811", *Asantesem* 6: 39-50.
Transn. of extracts from 2 letterbooks (ms.).
Intrn. (brief).
- 1979a "On preferential trading terms: A letter from Asantehene Osei Bonsu to the Danish Governor (1819)", *Asantesem* 10: 55-7.
Transn. and discussion of a document.
- 1979b "The Danes and the Gold Coast: 10 Danish documents of the early 1830s", *Asantesem* 10: 64-71.
Transn.
- 1979c "Population and economy. A late 18th century Danish account of Asante and the South-Eastern Province", *Asantesem* 11: 57-9.
Translates and discusses a report (ca. 1786-91).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1979d "More Danish accounts of the 1811 Asante expedition", *Asante-
sem* 11: 60-71.
Transn. of extracts from official Danish documents, 1810-13.
(occasionally giving Danish words in brackets).
- KEAY, John, intr.**
1984 *Mungo Park: Travels in the Interior of Africa* (London. Pp.
xxii, 203).
Lavish reprint of the 1860 ed. of P's *Travels in the Interior
Districts of Africa* (1799).
Intrn. + epilogue: biogr. (says little on Africa).
Maps: 1 new.
App.: glossary (brief; same as in SWIFT 1983).
- KENNEDY, Reginald F., ed.**
1961, 1964 Thomas Baines: *Journal of Residence in Africa 1842-53*
(2 vols., Cape Town. Pp. xix, 252; xi, 355).
Trpn. of the journal of an artist in South Africa.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann.
App.: chronological list of B's pictures.
Maps: 3 new.
Index (good): general.
- KEPPEL-JONES, Arthur, ed.**
1960 *Philipps, 1820 Settler* (Pietermaritzburg. Pp. 371).
Trpn. of papers of Thomas Philipps on South Africa, 1820-30.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann.
Maps: 1 old (redrawn), 1 new.
App.: genealogical table.
- KILSON, Marion, ed.**
1967 *Excerpts from the Diary of Kwaku Niri (alias J.G.Hammond)
1884-1918* (Legon: mimeo. Pp. 45).
Trpn. of extracts from the diary of a Gã trader in Accra.
Intrn. (very brief).
Ann. by KN's nephew, E.A.Ammah.
App.: genealogy.
- KIRBY, Percival R.**
1965 *Sir Andrew Smith, M.D., K.C.B. His Life, Letters and Works*
(Cape Town. Pp. ix, 358).
Biographical study. interspersed with long extracts (trpn.)
from his papers (on South Africa).
Maps: 1 new.
Index: 1 of names, 1 of S's life (= chronological
table), 1 of places.
Bibl.
- 1968-9 "Unpublished documents relating to the career of Nathaniel
Isaacs, the Natal pioneer", *AN&N* 18, 2: 63-79 and 6: 237-42.
Trpn. of letters from and to I (1832-40), linked by editorial
narrative. Throws light on his book, *Travels and Adventures
in Eastern Africa* (1836).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1971 John Burrow: *Travels in the Wilds of Africa. Being the Diary of a Young Scientific Assistant who Accompanied Sir Andrew Smith in the Expedition of 1834-1836* (Cape Town. Pp. 90).
 Intrn.: biogr.; other reports on the expedition.
 Ann.
 Maps: 1 old.
 Index: names.

See HERMAN & KIRBY 1970.

KIRK-GREENE, Anthony H.M.

- 1962 *Barth's Travels in Nigeria* (London. Pp. xii, 300).
 Extracts from the sections on Northern Nigeria in Heinrich B, *Travels and Discoveries in North and Central Africa* (1857-8).
 Intrn. (good): B the man; critique of *Travels and Discoveries*; B in retrospect.
 App.: chronological table (B's journey, 1849-55).
 Maps: 1 old.
 Index: names.
 Bibl.: source materials (some unpubl.).
- 1971 Henry/Heinrich Barth: *Collection of Vocabularies of Central-African Languages* (2 vols., London. Pp. xi, 334, 295).
 Facsimile of the 1862 English/German ed.
 Intrn. (brief): non-linguistic; describes the history of B's collection.

KIRKMAN, James S., ed.

- 1980 "The Zanzibar diary of John Studdy Leigh", *IJAHS* 13: 281-312 and 492-507.
 Trpn. of extracts from the diary of an English trading agent, 1837-8.
 Intrn.
 Ann. (detailed).

KOCK, Willem J. de, ed.

- *1965 *Reize in de Binnen-Landen van Zuid-Afrika. Gedaan in den Jaare 1803 door W.B.E. Paravicini di Capelli, Kapitein Aid de Camp, by den Gouverneur van de Caap de Goede Hoop* (Cape Town. Pp. xxxiii, 290).
 Trpn. of PdC's ms. (his own version of the official journal of the journey of Governor J.W. Jansens, which he also wrote).
 Intrn. (good).
 Ann. (detailed, in Afrikaans).
 Maps: 2 new.
 English summary of intrn. and transn. of extracts from the text.
 Index: mainly names.
 Bibl. (good).
- 1968 intr. *Ludwig Alberti's Account of the Tribal Life & Customs of the Xhosa in 1807* (Cape Town. Pp. xiv, 117).
 English transn. by William Fehr from the original German ms., publ. in 1810 (Dutch), 1811 (French), 1815 (German).
 Intrn. (brief).

See RAIDT 1971-3.

LIST A: EDITIONS

KRIGE, Susan, ed.

1983

The Frontier. Source Material on South African History
(Cape Town. Pp. ix, 48).

Textbook for South African schools, with 21 extracts, mainly from early 19th c. European sources, each followed by questions.

Intrn.: the debate on the Cape Eastern Frontier; the Khoi, the San and the colonists; the Xhosa and the colonists.

Maps: 3 new.

Bibl.: suggestions for further reading.

KRÜGER, B.: see BREDEKAMP & HATTINGH 1981.

KRUGER, E.: see GERMOND 1967.

KUN, [Nikolas] de

1960

"La vie et le voyage de Ladislas Magyar dans l'intérieur du Congo en 1850-1852", *Bulletin des Séances, Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer* (Brussels) VI, 4: 605-36.

Transn. of 5 extracts from M's *Délafrikai levelei es naplókivonatai* (1857).

Intrn. (biogr.).

Maps: 1 old, 2 new.

Bibl.

KUP, [Alexander] P., ed.

1967

Adam Afzelius: *Sierra Leone Journal, 1795-1796* (Uppsala. Pp. xv, 177).

Trpn. of the journal of a Swedish botanist who went to Africa in the service of the Sierra Leone Company, 1792; includes non-botanical material.

Intrn.; biographical note by Carl Widstrand.

Ann. (detailed; not always reliable).

Indexes: 1 botanical, 1 general.

Bibl.

KÜPPER, Thirza: see HILL 1984.

LAGARDE, Georgette: see BRUNSCHWIG 1972.

LANGE, Dierk

1972

"Un vocabulaire kanuri de la fin du XVIIe siècle", *Cahiers d'études Africaines* 12: 277-90.

Trpn. of a vocabulary from an anonymous ms., 1697; offers modern identifications.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1981 "Un document de la fin du XVII^e siècle sur le commerce transsaharien", in: *Le sol, la parole et l'écrit. Mélanges en hommage à Raymond Mauny* (Paris), 673-84. Also in: *Revue Française d'Histoire d'Outre-Mer* LXVI (1979) 211-22.
Trpn. of a ms. on trans-Saharan trade written by Pétis de la Croix, 1697; summary (English, French).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- LANGE, Dierk & BERTHOUD, Silvio**
*1972 "L'intérieur de l'Afrique occidentale d'après Giovanni Lorenzo Anania (xvi^e siècle)", *Cahiers d'Histoire Mondiale* 14: 299-351.
Variorum edition (with transn.) of a chapter in A's geographical work, *L'Universale fabrica del mondo, overo cosmografia* (3 eds.: 1573, 1576, 1582).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 new.
- LANGE, Kofi Ron, trans.**
1985 J.G.Christaller: *Twi Mmeseusem Mpensa-Ahansia Mmoaano. A Collection of 3600 Tshi Proverbs in Use among the Negroes of the Gold Coast Speaking the Asante and Fante Language* (privately published, mimeo: Abetifi-Kwahu, Ghana). Pp. 302).
C's proverb collection (publd. 1879), with English transn. (fairly literal) for each one.
- LANGHAM-CARTER, R.R.**
1973 "Two letters from the promontory of the Cape, written in March 1775 by Fr. von Wurmb", *QBSAL* 28: 42-52.
Transn. of extracts from *Briefe des Herrn Wurmb und des Herrn Baron von Wolzogen...* (1794).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- LAST, D. Murrayl: CURTIN 1967.**
- LAU, Brigitte, ed.**
*1984-5 Carlo Hugo Hahn: *Tagebücher 1837-1860 (Diaries. A Missionary in Nama- and Damaraland)* (3 vols. so far. Windhoek. Pp. xi, xi, xi, 892).
Trpn. (not transn.) of the diary of a Rhenish Mission Society missionary in central Namibia.
Intrn.: historical background (brief); editorial policy.
Ann. (in English).
Apps.: supplementary documents.
Index (each volume): names (those for Vols. 2-3 are good, containing biographical information).
Bibl. (each volume).

LIST A: EDITIONS

LE BLANC, Monique: see BLANC.

LE CORDEUR, Basil: see CORDEUR.

LEE, Caroline, ed.

- 1960 *Elton in the Southern Highlands of Tanganyika* (Dar es Salaam. Pp. 60).
Extracts from James E's 1877 diary, publd. as Part 2 of his *Travels and Researches among the Lakes and Mountains of East and Central Africa* (1879); linked by narrative.
Intrn. (brief).
Maps: 1 new.

LEGUZZANO, Graziano Maria de, ed.

- 1965 João António Cavazzi de Montecúccolo: *Descrição histórica dos três Reinos do Congo, Matamba e Angola* (2 vols., Lisbon. Pp. lviii, 430, 493).
Transn. (not very reliable) of C's book, *Istorica Descrizione de'tre Regni Congo, Matamba, et Angola* (1687).
Biobibliographical intrn. (good) by F. Leite de Faria.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 68 supplementary documents; chronological table; lists of popes, bishops, rulers etc.
Maps: 1 old, 2 new.
Indexes (good): 1 of persons (with biographical data), 1 of places and African words.
Bibl. (good).

LEITE DE FARIA: see FARIA.

LEPORACE, Tullia Gasparrini, ed.

- *1966 *Le navigazioni Atlantiche del Veneziano Alvise da Mosto* (Venice. Pp. xxiii, 356).
Variorum ed.: all versions of Cadamosto's account, including the 1455 voyage to W. Africa (written ca. 1463).
Intrn.: biogr.
Ann. (with Africanist notes by Raymond Mauny).
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

LEVERTON, B.J.T.

- 1972 "A letter from Natal, July 1861", *QBSAL* 26: 51-60.
Trpn. of a letter by an Englishman, Charles Midgley.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann.

LEVIN ROBINSON: see ROBINSON (A.M.).

LIST A: EDITIONS

LEWSEN, Phyllis, ed.

- 1960 *Selections from the Correspondence of John X. Merriman, 1870-1890* (Cape Town. Pp. xxi, 318).
Trpn. of extracts from the correspondence of a South African parliamentarian.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 new.
Index: mostly names.
Bibl. (good).
- 1984 Robert Wilmot: *A Cape Traveller's Diary, 1856* (Craighall [South Africa]. Pp. 174).
Trpn. of the diary of an English gentleman.
Intrn. (very brief).
Ann. (detailed).
App.: glossary (botanical).
Index: names.
Bibl. (brief).

LIESEGANG, Gerhard

- 1966 "*Resposta das Questoes sobre os Cafres*" ou *Noticias etnograficas sobre Sofala do fim do século XVIII* (Lisbon. Pp. 38).
Trpn. of a Portuguese ms., probably written by the Governor of Sofala (Mozambique), C.J. dos Reis e Gama, 1796, in response to a questionnaire (partly ethnographic).
Intrn.
Ann.
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl.
- 1977 "New light on Venda traditions: Mahumane's account of 1730", *HA* 4: 163-82.
Transn. and discussion of part of a Dutch ms. containing the account of an African who visited the Venda king, 1727/8.

LIVERSIDGE, Richard: see FFOLIOTT & LIVERSIDGE 1971

LLOYD, Moira: see ROBERTS 1979.

LLOYD, Pieterl C.: see CURTIN 1967.

LOCKHART, Donald: see BECKINGHAM 1984.

LOMBARD-JOURDAN, Anne

- 1980 "Une description inédite des îles Comores (1743)", *Omalu si Anio* 11: 177-99.
Trpn. of a section on the Comoro Islands in the journal of Mathieu de Gennes, on a vessel of the Compagnie des Indes.
Intrn.: the author; his mss.; his route.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 3 old.

LOTH, Heinrich, ed.

- 1986 *Reisen nach Nigritien. Bilder afrikanischer Vergangenheit* (Leipzig. Pp. 312).

LIST A: EDITIONS

Anthology of extracts from German travelogues and German transns. of non-German travelogues, 17th c. - 1914.
 Intrn. (brief) + sub-intrns.
 Ann. (sparse).
 App.: glossary; data on a few places and persons.
 Bibl.

LOW, D.A., ed.

1971

The Mind of Buganda. Documents of the Modern History of an African Kingdom (London. Pp. xxxvii, 234).
 Pp. 1-10: 10 documents dating from the 1840s to 1883.
 Ann. (sparse).
 Index: general.

LUCIUS, Robert] von (selected by)

1980

"Cape Town, 1862 as described by Reinhold Werner", *AN&N* 24, 4: 133-7.
 Transn. (by C.K.Bergs) of extracts from W's *Die preußische Expedition nach China, Japan und Siam in den Jahren 1860, 1861 und 1862* (1863) referring to the Cape.
 Intrn.

LY, Abdoulaye

1964

Un navire de commerce sur la côte sénégalienne en 1685 (Dakar. Pp. 68).
 Trpn. of a French ship's journal.
 Intrn.
 Ann. (sparse).
 Indexes: 1 of ships, 1 of places.

LYE, William F., ed.

*1975

Andrew Smith's Journal of his Expedition into the Interior of South Africa, 1834-1836: An Authentic Narrative of Travels and Discoveries, the Manners and Customs of the Native Tribes, and the Physical Nature of the Country (Cape Town. Pp. xii, 323).
 Trpn. of the ms. of a Scottish doctor: not his *Diary* (publd. 1939-40) but his journal (written 1836-8); also material from his notes, correspondence and a report publd. in 1836.
 Intrn.
 Ann. (sparse).
 Maps: 1 new.
 Index (good: much additional information): general.

LYNCH, Hollis R., ed.

1971

Black Spokesman. Selected Published Writings of Edward Wilmot Blyden (London. Pp. xi, 354).
 Extracts from the publications, 1856-1908, of a West Indian publicist/statesman who spent much of his life in Liberia.
 Intrn.; 7 sub-intrns.
 Index: names.
 Bibl.: B's publications.

1978

Selected Letters of Edward Wilmot Blyden (Millwood, N.Y.: Pp. xxii, 530).

LIST A: EDITIONS

Trpn., covering 1851-1910, including material on Liberia etc.
 Intrn.; 9 sub-intrns. (9 chronological chapters).
 Ann. (sparse).
 Apps.: ms. sources; B's correspondents.
 Index: names.

MACONI, Vittorio

1964

"Antologia missionaria africana tratta da un manoscritto inedito del sec. XVII", in: *Miscellanea Carlo Figini* (Hildephonsiana 6: Venegono), 328-49.
 Trpn. of extracts from a 17th c. ms. by a Capuchin, Giovanni da Romano, with advice to missionaries in Congo and Angola; interspersed with commentary.

MALY, Zbyenek

1972

"The visit of Martin Lang, Czech Franciscan, in Gondär in 1752", *Journal of Ethiopian Studies* 10, 2: 17-25.
 Includes trpn. of a letter (Latin) written in 1754.

MARSH, Zoë, ed.

1961

East Africa Through Contemporary Records (Cambridge. Pp. xxi, 215).
 Anthology of extracts from publd. works, half of them pre-1885. Intended as companion to Z.Marsh and G.W.Kingsnorth, *An Introduction to the History of East Africa* (1957).
 Intrn. (brief); brief sub-intrn. for each document.
 Maps: 1 old, 3 new.
 Apps.: chronological table.
 Bibl.

MARTIN, Bernhard & SPURRELL, Mark, eds.

1962

The Journal of a Slave Trader (John Newton) 1750-1754. With Newton's Thoughts upon the African Slave Trade (London. Pp. 121).
 Trpn. of extracts from N's journal and his publications.
 Intrn. (good): N's life; changing attitude to slave trade; currency; the ms.; complementary documents.
 Ann. (weak on Africa).
 Maps: 1 new.
 App.: glossary.
 Index: mainly names.

MARTIN, Victor: see BECKER & MARTIN.

MARY, Geo. T.

1978

Im schwarzen Erdteil. Die faszinierende Geschichte der Erforschung Afrikas (Tübingen. Pp. 523).
 Anthology of extracts from the publications of 18 German authors on Africa (19th-early 20th c.), with focus on exploration.
 Intrn.
 App.: chronological table.
 Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

MAUNY, Raymond

- 1961 "Relation du Sr Destival, 1672", *BIFAN* 13: 1298-1301.
Trpn. of a brief ms. on the West African coast (Senegal to Gold Coast).
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1967 "Le livre de bord du navire Santa Maria Da Comçeiça (1522)", *BIFAN* 29: 512-35.
Transn. of a Portuguese document publ. in BRASIO 1965 (cf. the English transn. by A. Ryder in *Journal of the Historical Society of Nigeria* 1 (1959): 294-321).
- 1974 "Révoltes d'esclaves à Gorée au milieu du XVIII^e siècle d'après Pruneau de Pommegorge", *Notes Africaines* 141: 11-13.
Extract from Antoine PdP, *Description de la Nigritie* (1789).
Intrn. (brief).
See BOURDON ET AL. 1960; LEPORACE 1966.

MAUNY, Raymond & MORAES, M.I. de

- 1975 "Règlement du Sam Chrystovà allant de São Tomé à la Mine (1535)", *BIFAN* 37: 779-83.
Transn. of a text publ. in BRASIO, MMA IV, on the transport of slaves from São Tomé to the Gold Coast.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (sparse).

MAXWELL, V.A. & McGEUGH, R.T., eds.

- 1978 *The Reminiscences of Thomas Stubbs, including Men I Have Known* (Cape Town. Pp. xvi, 302).
Trpn. of papers of an 1820 settler, written 1868-76, referring mainly to the eastern Cape.
Intrn.: biogr.; historical background.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 old, 2 new.
Apps.: list of S's papers; 2 genealogies.
Index: names.
Bibl.

MAZENOT, Georges: see COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969.

MBODJ, M.: see BECKER ET AL. 1978.

M'BOKOLO, Blikie, intr.

- 1981 David Livingstone: *Explorations dans l'Afrique australe et dans le bassin du Zambèze (1840-64)* (Paris. Pp. xxxix, 339).
Facsimile of the 1868 French transn. of extracts from L's *Missionary Travels* (1857) and *Narrative of an Expedition* (1865).
Intrn.: narrative; L's ideology.
Bibl.

McCASKIE, T.C. & VIAFE, J.E.

- 1979 "A contemporary account in Twi of the *akompi sa* of 1863: A document with a commentary", *Asantesem* 11: 72-8.

LIST A: EDITIONS

Transn. of an account by "J.P.B.", 1864, publd. in Twi in the Basel Mission's newspaper, *Sika-Npoano Kristofa a Wokasa Twi no Senkekafo* in 1893, concerning the intervention of Asante troops in southern Ghana in 1863.

Intrn.

Ann.

McGEOGH, R.T.: see MAXWELL & McGEOGH 1978.

MEARS, G., intr.

1971

W.B.Boyce: *Notes on South African Affairs* (Cape Town. Pp. [vii, xviii, xvii, 215, xxxvii, [viii]).

Facsimile of a book (1838) by a Wesleyan missionary, William Binnington B, referring to South Africa, 1834-8.

Intrn. (brief).

Index: general.

MEARS, W.G.A., trans.

1972

The Diary of Erasmus Smit (Cape Town. Pp. x, 190).

Transn. of H.F.Schoon, *Uit het Dagboek van Erasmus Smit* (1897), referring to a party of frontiersmen who crossed the Orange R., 1836-9.

Intrn. (very brief).

Maps: 1 new.

Index: names.

MEINTJES, Johannes, ed.

1974

"The Keyter Journal", *AN&N* 21, 1: 14-25.

Trpn. of the journal of a South African ostrich farmer, Bernhardus Keyter, 1869-99.

Intrn.

Ann.

MENDES, M.A. de Carvalho: see HEINTZE 1985.

MÉNIER, Marie-Antoinette: see BRUNSCHWIG 1966.

METCALFE, George] E., ed.

1964

Great Britain and Ghana: Documents of Ghana History, 1807-1957 (Legon/London. Pp. 778).

Extracts from Colonial Office records (PRO) and Gold Coast Legislative Council debates etc.

Sub-intrn. to each of the 41 chapters.

Ann.

Apps.: 2 supplementary documents; lists of governors and treaties; trade/revenue statistics.

Maps: 4 new.

Index: general.

1968

John Beecham: *Ashantee and the Gold Coast* (London. Pp. xxxi, xix, 376).

Facsimile of a book (1841) by a secretary of the Wesleyan Methodist Missionary Society (London).

Intrn.: makes only slight use of B's papers.

Ann. (sparse): mainly shows where B copied Bowdich and Dupuis.

LIST A: EDITIONS

MILLER, Randall M., ed.

- *1978 "Dear Master": *Letters of a Slave Family* (Ithaca. Pp. 281).
Trpn. of letters from freed slaves who migrated to Liberia,
mid-19th c., and of their relatives in the American South.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).

MILLNER, Lisa: see SPOHR 1964.

MITFORD-BARBERTON, Ivan

- 1966 "Fred Barber's expedition to the Victoria Falls in 1875",
QBSAL 21: 54-66.
Trpn. of the original diary of Frederick Hugh B's hunting
trip (not the version rewritten in 1895: cf. TABLER 1960).
Intrn. and postscript (brief).
Ann.: mainly identification of names.
- 1970 *Comdt. Holden Bowker* (Cape Town. Pp. 274).
Reprint of 2 booklets by HB (1854, 1858); trpn. of his war
journal (1835) and an account of a hunting trip (1847);
extracts from Bertram B's memoirs (1820s-70s), referring to
the Cape's eastern frontier.
Intrn.: biogr.
App.: genealogical data.

MONOD, Théodore

- 1961 "Note sur quelques cartes anciennes de São Tomé", *Congresso
Internacional de História dos Descobrimentos, Actas II*
(Lisbon) 277-98.
Commentary on some maps of São Tomé, 16th-18th c.;
reproduces 2; compares the toponyms and identifies most of
them.
- 1977 "Une enquête ouest-africaine sur les pêches au XVIII^e siècle",
Revue française d'Histoire d'Outre-Mer 65 No. 237: 516-20.
Trpn. of an anonymous questionnaire on fish in West Africa,
sent to Whydah in 1724. Suggests it provided material for
H.-L. Duhamel du Monceau, *Traité général des pesches* (1769-
1782).
Intrn.; postscript.
Ann.

See BOURDON et al. 1960.

MONTEZ, Caetano C.

- 1970-73 "Apontamentos para o roteiro dos monumentos militares portu-
gueses", *Monumenta* 6: 67-73; 7: 77-80; 8: 73-8.
Trpn. of many short extracts from Portuguese documents on
Mozambique forts, 16th-19th c.; interspersed with commentary.

MOORHEAD, Alan, intr.

- 1961 Richard F. Burton: *The Lake Regions of Central Africa*
(2 vols., New York. Pp. xxiii, 412, 468).
Facsimile of the 1860 ed.; intrn. adds little.

LIST A: EDITIONS

MORAES, Nize Izabel de

- 1973 "La Petite Côte d'après Francisco de Lemos Coelho (XVII^e siècle)", *BIFAN* 35: 239-68.
Transn. of the Senegal section of LC's 1684 Portuguese ms. (publd. by Damião Peres, 1953). Cf. HAIR 1985.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- #1976 "Contribution à l'histoire de la Petite Côte (Sénégal) au XVII^e siècle", doctoral thesis (3^e cycle), Paris.
4 volumes of edited texts (Pp. xxxvii, 1361) for the period 1600-77 and 2 volumes of synthesis.
- 1981 "Le séjour de Scellier à la Petite Côte (1677)", *BIFAN* 43: 13-23.
Trpn. of 6 short French documents on a slaving voyage of the Sieur Scellier to Cape Verde.
Intrn.
Ann.
- See MAUNY & MORAES 1975; THILMANS & MORAES 1970-81.

MORITZ, Walter, ed.

- 1981 *Erkundungsreise ins Ovamboland 1857. Tagebuch Carl Hugo Hahn* (Schwäbisch Gmünd. Pp. 48).
Trpn. of the diary (abridged?) of a German missionary in what is now Namibia. Cf. LAU 1984-5.
Intrn. and epilogue (brief).
Ann. (sparse).
Maps: 1 new.

MOTA, Avelino Teixeira da

- 1964 *A cartografia antiga da África Central e a travessia entre Angola e Moçambique, 1500-1860* (Lourenço Marques. Pp. 255).
Detailed review of the cartography of Central Africa, with copies of 32 maps (1552-1857), many of them simplified and thus clarified.
Bibl. (good).
- 1968 "A primeira visita de um Governador das Ilhas de Cabo Verde à Guiné (António Velho Tinoco, c. 1575)", *Ultramar* 32, viii, 4: 57-69.
Trpn. of an undated, anonymous Portuguese document on the Upper Guinea Coast, possibly by AVT and João Rebelo (reprinted in MOTA 1977).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- *1969a "Un document nouveau pour l'histoire des Peuls au Sénégal pendant les XV^e et XVI^e siècles", *BCGP* 24: 781-860.
Trpn. and transn. of an anonymous Portuguese ms., c. 1600.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Apps.: 11 documents in Portuguese and in transn.
Maps: 1 old, 3 new.
Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1969b "A viagem do navio Santiago à Serra Leoa e Rio de S.Domingos en 1526", *BCGP* 24: 529-79.
Trpn. of the log of a Portuguese slave ship.
Intrn.
Ann.
Maps: 1 old, 3 new.
- 1970 "A malograda viagem de Diogo Carreiro a Tombuctu em 1565", *BCGP* 25: 3-23.
Republishes and discusses a Portuguese letter (publd. 1898) written in Senegal, 1565; links it with information given by A. Álvares de Almada at the end of the 16th c.
Maps: 1 new.
- 1972 "The Mande trade in Costa da Mina according to Portuguese documents until the mid-sixteenth century", paper presented to Conference on Manding Studies, School of Oriental & African Studies, London (Pp. 24).
Monograph with (pp. 17-24) trpn. of 4 Portuguese documents (3 of them unpubld.), early 16th c.
- *1974 *As viagens do bispo D. Frei Vitoriano Portuense a Guiné e a cristianização dos reis de Bissau* (Lisbon. Pp. x, 188).
6 documents on Bissau, 1616 and 1686-96, mainly unpubld.
Intrn. (good).
Ann.
Apps.: 17 supplementary documents, 1694-8.
Maps: 9 old, 2 new.
Index: general.
Bibl.
- *1977, ed. André Donelha: *Descrição da Serra Leoa e dos Rios de Guiné do Cabo Verde* (Lisbon. Pp. xiv, 472).
Trpn. of a ms. of 1625; English transn. by P.E.H.Hair; separate publication, with same trpn. and editorial apparatus but with French transn. by Léon Bourdon.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. by TdM and P.E.H.Hair (detailed: twice as long as the text).
Maps: 5 old, 8 new.
Index (good): general.
Bibl. and cartography (good).
- See CORTESAO & MOTA 1960; HAIR ET AL. 1984.

NOTA, A. Teixeira da & MAUNY, Raymond]

- 1975 "Le voyage du navire Santiago à la Sierra Leone et à la Rivière de S.Domingos (1526)", *BIFAN* 37: 589-603.
Transn. of part of MOTA 1969b.
Maps: 1 new (only).
- 1978 "Livre de l'armement du navire São Miguel, de l'île de São Tomé au Bénin (1522)", *BIFAN* 40: 66-86.
Transn. of a Portuguese ms. (a ship's trading records): cf. the abridged English transn. in RYDER 1971.
Intrn.
Ann.

LIST A: EDITIONS

MOUSER, Bruce, ed.

- #1979a *Guinea Journals. Journals into Guinea-Conakry during the Sierra Leone phase, 1800-1821* (Washington D.C., Pp. viii, 292).
Trpn. of 3 journals from the records of the British Colonial Office.
Intrn.
Index.

MUFFETT, D.J.M.: see JOHNSTON & MUFFETT 1974.

MULLER, [Christoffel] F.J.

- *1960 *Johannes Frederik Kirsten oor die Toestand van die Kaap-kolonie in 1795: 'n Kritiese Studie* (Pretoria. Pp. 110).
Trpn. of a letter about the Cape (written in English, 1795; first publ., 1897), with a thorough critical study.
Intrn. (good): biogr.; textual analysis; dating of the text; value as a source.
Ann. (detailed).
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).
- 1978a "'N nederlander rapporteer oor die Kaap in 1794", *QBSAL* 32: 75-80.
Trpn. of extracts from 2 anonymous letters from the Cape.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1978b "'N blad uit die journaal van 'n sieketrooster, 1709-1710", *Historia* 23: 90-98.
Trpn. and discussion of an extract from the journal of an anonymous "comforter of the sick" on a Dutch ship at the Cape.

NASH, M.D.

- 1979 "John Baillie at the Buffalo River Mouth", *AN&N* 23, 8: 338-42.
Includes a trpn. of a memorial by B, 1847, seeking a grant of land.

NATIONAL ARCHIVES OF RHODESIA & CENTRO DE ESTUDOS HISTÓRICOS ULTRAMARINOS

- 1962-75 *Documents on the Portuguese in Mozambique and Central Africa, 1497-1840. Documentos sobre os Portugueses em Moçambique e na Africa Central, 1497-1840* (Lisbon. 8 vols., c. 5,000 pages). Edited by António Silva Rego, T.W.Baxter and E.E.Burke.
Documents (mainly unpubld.) from archives and libraries in Europe and Goa, with parallel English translation (not always reliable) by Manuel Guilherme Freire d'Andrade (Vols. 1-7) and Jorge A.P.Rosa (Vol. 8). So far the volumes actually publ. go no further than 1588.
Ann. (sparse).
Indexes (Portuguese, English, each volume): names.

LIST A: EDITIONS

NEBL, A.: see HUBER & DELLAGIACOMA 1973.

NEWBURY, Colin W.

- 1965 *British Policy towards West Africa: Select Documents, 1786-1874* (Oxford. Pp. xxvii, 656).
Documents (publd./unpubld.) from the Foreign Office and Colonial Office records, arranged according to subject.
Intrn.; 15 sub-intrns.
Ann.
Maps: 7 old.
Index: general.
- 1966, ed. Sir Richard Burton: *A Mission to Gelele, King of Dahome* (London. Pp. ix, 372).
Abridged reprint (two-thirds of the 1864 ed.).
Intrn.: historical background; editorial principles.
Maps: 1 old.
Index: general.
- 1971 *British Policy towards West Africa: Select Documents, 1875-1914* (Oxford. Pp. xxvii, 636).
Sequel to NEWBURY 1965.
Intrn.; 4 sub-intrns.
Ann.
Apps.: statistical tables.
Maps: 4 old.
Index: general.

NEWITT, M.D.D., ed.

- #1963 "Ignacio Caetano Xavier's account of Portuguese East Africa, completed December 26th 1758, first published 1955", conference on The History of the Central African Peoples (Lusaka).
- 1965 Francisco Raymundo Moraes Pereira: *Account of a Journey Made Overland from Quelimane to Angoche in 1753* (Salisbury. Pp. 40).
Transn. of 2 mss., containing reports by a Portuguese judge, including a description of the ruler of Angoche.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl.

NEWMAN, Paul, ed.

- 1971 "The life and travels of Dorugu", in: A.H.M.Kirk-Greene & PN, eds., *West African Travels and Adventures: Two Autobiographical Narratives from Northern Nigeria* (New Haven) 27-129.. Apparently a revised version of the English transn. (publd. 1886) of a section from J.F.Schön, *Magána Hausa. Native Literature* (1885), giving the autobiography of a Hausa who served H.Barth in the western and central Sudan, 1850-55.
Intrn. (by Newman and Kirk-Greene).
Ann. (detailed).
App.: specimens of the Hausa text, publd. in 1885.
Maps: 1 new.
Index: names.
Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

NICOL, Davidson, ed.

- 1969 *Africanus Horton: The Dawn of Nationalism in Modern Africa*
(London. Pp. ix, 186).
Extracts from the political, educational, scientific and
medical writings (1860s-70s) of J.A.B.H., a Sierra Leonean
who entered the British army's medical service; includes
trpn. of a few letters from Colonial Office records.
Intrn.; 17 sub-intrns. (good).
Ann. (sparse).
Maps: 1 new.
App.: obituaries.
Bibl.

NIENABER, Gabriell S.

- 1968 *Louis Henri Meurant: 'N Vroeë Afrikaanse Joernalis* (Cape
Town. Pp. 188).
Selection of newspaper articles etc. by an Afrikaner
journalist, 1863-90.
Intrn.: biogr.
Ann. (detailed).

NIENABER, Gabriell S. & RAVEN-HART, Rowland, eds.

- 1970 *Johann Daniel Buttner's Account of the Cape. Brief Descrip-
tion of Natal. Journal Extracts on East Indies* (Cape Town.
Pp. 161).
Trpn. and transn. of a copy of a lost German ms. (c.1716) by
a soldier (later physician) of the Dutch East India Company.
Intrn.: biogr.; the mss.; their value; the copyist.
Ann. (detailed).
Index: persons.

NØRREGÅRD, Georg, ed.

- 1964 *Guvernør Edw. Carstensens Indberetninger fra Guinea 1842-
1850* (Copenhagen. Pp. 445).
Trpn. of ca. 250 reports sent by the last Danish Governor on
the Gold Coast (each preceded by a brief summary). Cf.
ANONYMOUS 1965.
Intrn.: biogr.; the mss.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 old.
Apps.: English summary; glossary.
Index: general.

NSASI, Ndembe: see BONTINCK & NSASI 1978.

OBENGA, Théophile

- 1973 "La faune du royaume de Kongo d'après un document inédit du
XVII^e siècle", *Africa* (Rome) 28: 73-89.
Trpn. and transn. of an Italian ms. by Francesco da Pavia,
sent as a missionary to Kongo, 1680.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann.: comparison with other sources.
Photos of the whole document.

LIST A: EDITIONS

O'FAHEY, R[ex] S.

- 1973 "Kordofan in the 18th century", *SNR* 54: 32-42.
 Transn. of a history of Kordofan publd. in E. de Cadalvène &
 J. de Breuvery, *L'Égypte et la Turquie* (1841).
 Intrn.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Maps: 1 old.
 See FISHER & FISHER 1972-86.

OLDEROGGE, D.A.

- 1969 "Eine Swahili-Wortliste aus dem Jahre 1811 aus den hand-
 schriftlichen Materialien von Admiral Krusenstern", in *Wort
 und Religion. Kalima na Dini. Studien zur Afrikanistik,
 Missionswissenschaft, Religionswissenschaft. Ernst Dammann
 zum 65. Geburtstag* (Stuttgart) 19-27.
 Trpn. and discussion of the Swahili and German columns of a
 wordlist collected by Thomas Smee on Zanzibar and the East
 African coast, 1811.
 Intrn.
 Ann.: comments on 12 terms.
- 1971a "Astrakhanets v Tombuktu v 1821 g.", *Afrikanskii
 Etnograficheskii Sbornik* 8: 3-22.
 Transn. of extracts from the account of a visit to Timbuktu
 by Wargee (probably an Armenian), publd. in *Royal Gold Coast
 Gazette*, 1822.
 Intrn.
 Ann.
- 1971b App.: list of places remembered by W.
 "Slovar' yazuika suakhili 1811 g.", *Afrikanskii
 Etnograficheskii Sbornik* 8: 75-82.
 (Original?) Russian version of OLDEROGGE 1969.

OLIVEIRA, Mário António Fernandes de

- 1968, 1971 *Angolana (Documentação sobre Angola)*, I-II (1783-1883,
 1883-1887) (Luanda. 2 vols. Pp. xlviii, 848; xliii, 938).
 Vol. II = in collaboration with Carlos Alberto Mendes do
 COUTO.
 Trpn. of documents on Angola from Portuguese archives (some
 already publd.). Cf. SANTOS 1976.
 Intrn. (brief), both volumes.
 Ann.
 Index (good): general, both volumes.
 Bibl., both volumes.

OOSTHUIZEN, S.P.R.: see SUID AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

ØVRELIID, Jostein, ed.

- #1969 Johannes Rask: *Ferd til og frå Guinea, 1708-1713* (Oslo. Pp.
 179).
 Transn. into New Norwegian of R's (Danish) book, *En kort og
 sandfartig reise beskrivelser til og fra Guinea* (1754),
 referring to the eastern Gold Coast and western Slave Coast.
 Omits the intrn. by Bishop Nannestad; alters some botanical
 and zoological names.

LIST A: EDITIONS

Intrn.: biogr.; transn. policy.
Ann. (sparse).
Maps: 1 old, 2 new.
Index (based on original index): general.

PANKHURST, Richard, ed.

- 1965 *Travellers in Ethiopia* (London. Pp. xii, 148).
Anthology of extracts (mainly 16th-19th c.).
Intrn. (brief) + 21 sub-intrns.
Ann.
Maps: 21 new.
Apps.: biographical sketches of the authors; list of rulers mentioned.
- 1980 Nathaniel Pearce: *Life and Adventures in Abyssinia* (2 vols.: London. Pp. xlix, ix, 348; viii, 349).
Facsimile of *The Life and Adventures of Nathaniel Pearce, written by himself, during a residence in Abyssinia, from the years 1810 to 1819* (1831).
Intrn.: biogr.
Bibl.
- #1982 Job Ludolphus: *A New History of Ethiopia* (London. Pp. xvi, 398, [iv]).
Facsimile of the 1682 English transn. of L's (alias Hiob Ludolf's) work (1681).
Intrn.
Maps: 1.
Apps.: 1 supplementary document (Ge'ez) with 1928 transn.; genealogy.
Bibl.
- 1983 "Captain Speedy's 'entertainment' - the reminiscences of a nineteenth century British traveller to Ethiopia", *Africa* (Rome) 38: 428-48.
Trpn. of 2 notebooks of Tristram S, used for lectures given in the mid-1880s and based on visits to Ethiopia in 1861-2, 1867, 1884.
Intrn. (brief).
Ann.

PEPPER, Herbert: see COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969.

PERROT, Dominique: see WILSON & PERROT 1971.

PERSON, Yves, intr.

- 1980 [Abdon-] Eugène Mage: *Voyage au Soudan Occidental (1863-1866)* (Paris. Pp. xvi, 308).
Facsimile of the 1872 abridged ed. of M's account of his expedition to Ségou (*Voyage dans le S.O.*, publd. 1868).
Intrn. (brief): biogr.; historical background.

PHAUP, A.E.: see BURKE 1969.

PHEIFFER, R.H.: see WATERHOUSE 1979.

LIST A: EDITIONS

PIAZZA, Calogero

- 1972-3 "Una relazione inedita sulle Missioni dei Minori Cappuccini Africa degli inizi del Settecento", *L'Italia Francescana* 47: 209-92, 347-73; 48: 5-46, 90-101.
Trpn. of a section on the Capuchin mission to Soyo in Giuseppe da Modena's ms., "Viaggio al Congo", with much material on Soyo, 1711-13.
Intrn.: GdM; the ms.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1977 "La missione del Soyo (1713-1716) nella relazione inedita di Giuseppe da Modena, O.F.M.Cap.", *L'Italia Francescana* 48: 209-92, 347-73. (? Also publ. separately: Rome, #1973)
- #1976 *La prefettura apostolica del Congo alla metà del XVII secolo. La relazione inedita di Girolamo da Montesarchio* (Milan).

PINA, Jean Rousset de

- 1972 "Le 'Voyage' inédit d'Edéstan Jardin sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique, 1845-1848", *Annales de la Faculté des Lettres et des Sciences Humaines*, Université de Dakar, 2: 235-65.
Detailed description of a ms. (1851) covering the whole West African coast, with detailed background information and a trpn. of a section on Senegambia and the Cape Verde Islands.
Ann.

PINA, Luis de, ed.

- 1967 "Tractado das queixas endemicas, e mais fataes nesta Conquista", *Stvdia* 20-22: 119-268.
Trpn. of a treatise by Francisco Damião Cosme, 1770, on medical conditions in Angola.
Intrn. (good): authorship; relates this work to other early medical writings on Africa.

PINTO-BULL, Benjamin: see BOULÈGUE & PINTO-BULL 1966.

PLETICHA, Heinrich, ed.

- 1976 Kungo Park: *Reisen ins innerste Afrika 1795-1806* (Tübingen. Pp. 332).
- 1979 Henry M. Stanley: *Die Entdeckung des Kongo* (Tübingen. Pp. 383).
- 1980 David Livingstone: *Zum Zambesi und quer durchs südliche Afrika 1849-1856* (Tübingen. Pp. 391).
- 1981 Henry M. Stanley: *Wie ich Livingstone fand* (Tübingen. Pp. 366).
- All 4 books consist of extracts from 19th c. German transns. (slightly modernised) of the explorers' books.
Intrn.
App.: short glossary (not always reliable).
Bibl. (poor).
- 1985 *Simbabwe* (Stuttgart. Pp. 352).
Anthology (German) of 24 European authors' writings on Zimbabwe, 1552-1979 (mainly late 19th - early 20th c.).
Intrn.: mainly narrative.
App.: glossary.
Bibl. (poor).

LIST A: EDITIONS

PLOEGER, Jan
1962

"Uit die briewe van Antony de Vletter, huisonderwyser, staatsmaker in diens van die 'Nieuwe Republiek', wildjagter, goud-delwer, eerste onderwyser en posmeester van Dullstroom (1882-1888)", *Historia* 7: 106-20.

Trpn. of extracts from letters of a Dutch settler in South Africa.

Intrn.

Ann.

PLÜDDELMANN, H.: see BREDEKAMP & HATTINGH 1981.

PORTER, A., ed.
#1975

Benjamin Stout: *Narrative of the Loss of the Ship Hercules, 1798* (Port Elizabeth).

PRESTON, Adrian, ed.
1971

The South African Diaries of Sir Garnet Wolseley 1875 (Cape Town. Pp. 293).

Trpn.

Intrn. (good): background; W's mss. and diaries; W's career up to 1875; the Natal mission; conclusion.

Ann.

App.: 1 supplementary document, 1875.

Index: names.

Bibl.

1973

The South African Journal of Sir Garnet Wolseley 1879-1880 (Cape Town. Pp. 359).

Trpn.

Intrn.: biogr.

Ann. (detailed).

Index: names.

Bibl.

PRIESTLEY, Margaret: see CURTIN 1967.

QUINN, David & SKELTON, Raleigh, intr.

1965

Richard Hakluyt: *The Principall Navigations, Voiages and Discoveries of the English Nation* (2 vols., Cambridge. Pp. lx, 975).

Facsimile of 1st ed. (1589), including important material on Africa.

Intrn. (good).

Index (good) by Alison Quinn: general.

RABONE, Arthur, ed.
1966

Records of a Pioneer Family (Cape Town. Pp. 158).

Trpn. (partly from "phonography", = shorthand) of papers of Alfred Essex (1851-2), William Rabone (1853) and Harriet Rabone (1854-90) on South Africa.

Intrn. + 3 sub-intrns. (very brief).

Ann. (very sparse).

LIST A: EDITIONS

RAFOLS, E. Serra: see BOURDON ET AL. 1960.

RAIDT, E.H., ed.

*1971,*1973 François Valentyn: *Description of the Cape of Good Hope and Matters Concerning it* (2 vols., Cape Town. Pp. xvii, 367, 306).

Original (Dutch) text of part of V's *Beschryving der Out en Nieuw Oost-Indie* (1726); parallel English transn. by R. Raven-Hart. (V, a clergyman in Dutch East India Company service, visited the Cape 4 times, 1685-1713.)

Intrn. by P. Serton (with English summary).

Ann. (detailed, in Afrikaans) by P. Serton, R. Raven-Hart and W. De Kock, identifying V's sources etc.

Maps: 2 old, 1 new.

Index: names.

RAINERI, Osvaldo

1980

"La relazioni fra chiesa etiopica e chiesa romana (Lettera di Remedio Prutky missionario in Etiopia nel 1752-1753)", *Nicolaus* (Bari) 2: 351-64.

Trpn. of a letter (Latin) written in Gondar by a Bohemian Franciscan missionary who was in Ethiopia 1752-3.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

1982-3

"La breve relazione del viaggio in Etiopia di Remedio Prutky, scritta il 15-12-1756", *Quaderni di Studi Etiopici* 3-4: 176-93.

Trpn. of another Latin ms. by P, written after his return from Ethiopia.

Intrn. (brief).

Ann. (sparse).

RAINERO, Romain, ed.

1970

La scoperta della costa occidentale d'Africa nelle relazioni di Gomes Eanes de Zurara, Diogo Gomes, Eustache de la Fosse, Valentim Fernandes e Duarte Pacheco Pereira (Milan. Pp. 279). Extracts from 5 Portuguese/French accounts of the West African coast, 15th-early 16th c., with parallel Italian transn.

Intrn.

Ann.

Maps: 1 old, 1 new.

Apps.: nautical glossary; list of 15th c. popes and Portuguese kings.

n.d.

(c. 1973)

Il Congo agli inizi del Settecento nella relazione di P. Luca da Caltanissetta (Florence. Pp. 478).

Trpn. of an Italian ms. on the Capuchin mission to Kongo, 1693-1701 (cf. BONTINCK 1970).

Intrn. (good).

Ann. (detailed).

Apps.: 4 supplementary documents; glossary.

Maps: 1 old, 1 new.

LIST A: EDITIONS

RAINIER, Margaret, ed.

- 1974 *The Journals of Sophia Pigot 1819-1821* (Cape Town. Pp. xvii, 172).
Trpn. of the journal of an 1820 Settler's daughter, referring to Albany.
Intrn.: biogr.; the mss.; P's family.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 old.
Apps.: chapter on Eliza S. Moodie; genealogy; P's party of settlers; P's code; etc.
Index: names.
Bibl.

RANDLES, V.G.L.: see COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969

RAPONDA-WALKER, André: see BRUNSCHWIG 1966

RAU, Virginia

- 1963 "O roteiro inédito de Viçente de Sintra de Goa para Moçambique", *Stvdia* 11: 257-61.
Trpn. of a short Portuguese rutter on Mozambique, ca. 1610.
Intrn.

RAVEN-HART, Rowland], trans. & ed.

- 1965 "Morgenstern's Letters from the East Indies, 1771", *QBSAL* 20: 20-23.
Transn. of an extract from [Heinrich Ludwig] M's *Briefe aus Ost-Indien* (1786).
Intrn.

Ann.

- 1967a *Scenes of the Cape of Good Hope in 1741 as Drawn by Johann Wolfgang Heydt* (Cape Town. Pp. 23).
Transn. of an extract from H's *Allerneuester geographisch-und topographischer Schauplatz von Afrika und Ost-Indien* (1744).
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (= asterisks referring to index).
Maps: 2 old.
Index: general (with extra information).

*1967b

- Before Van Riebeeck. Callers at South Africa from 1488 to 1652* (Cape Town. Pp. 216).
153 documents, many unpubld., many in transn. (Danish, Dutch, French, German, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish).
Sub-intrn. (brief) to each document.
Ann. (= asterisks referring to index).
Maps: 4 old.
Index (good): general (with extra information).
Bibl. (good, but titles abbreviated).

1968

- "Wolf's Journey to Ceylon", *AN&N* 18, 1: 18-24.
Transn. of extracts on the Cape (1751) from Johann Christian Wolf, *Reise nach Ceylon* (1782).
Intrn.

Ann.

1970a

- "Letters by Captain C.C. Best", *AN&N* 19, 2: 73-6.
Transn. of extracts on the Cape from B's *Briefe* (1807).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1970b "Danish missionaries at the Cape of Good Hope", *QBSAL* 24: 219-22.
Transn. of an extract from Johann Georg Bövingh, *Curieuse Beschreibung und Nachricht von den Hottentotten* (1712); refers to ca. 1710.
Intrn.
Ann.
- *1971 *Cape Good Hope 1652-1702: The First 50 Years of Dutch Colonisation as Seen by Callers* (2 vols., Cape Town. Pp. xv, 527).
104 extracts from c. 60 sources (some unpubld., some in transn. from French/German/Dutch). Note: a dozen of these were first publd. as articles in *AN&N* or *QBSAL*, 1964-70.
Sub-intrns.
Ann. (detailed).
Index.
Bibl.
- 1976 Nicolas Louis de la Caille: *Travels at the Cape 1751-53* (Cape Town. Pp. viii, 52).
Transn. of Abbé de la C's *Journal historique du voyage fait au Cap de Bonne-Espérance* (1763), interspersed with passages from *Mémoires de l'Académie Royale des Sciences* ("1751").
Intrn. (brief).
Ann. (e.g. discusses C's criticisms of Peter Kolb).
Maps: 1 old.
Index (by R.R-H and V.S.FORBES): general.
See NIENABER & RAVEN-HART 1970; RAIDT 1971-3.
- REA, William Francis.
1963 "Pre-pioneer missionary in Southern Rhodesia. A year from the diary of Fr. Peter Prestage, S.I. 1884", *Archivum Historicum Societatis Iesu* (Rome) 32: 293-321.
Trpn. of extract from diary of a Jesuit, on Matabeleland.
Intrn. (with French summary).
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 new.
- REBELO, Manuel dos Anjos da Silva
1970 *Relações entre Angola e Brasil (1808-1830)* (Lisbon. Pp. 457).
Monograph. Pp. 339-444: trpn. of 93 documents.
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl.
- REGO, António da Silva: see NATIONAL ARCHIVES 1962-75.
- REINHARD, Wolfgang, ed.
1982 *Hendrik Witbooi: Afrika den Afrikanern! Aufzeichnungen eines Nama-Häuptlings aus der Zeit der deutschen Eroberung Südwestafrikas 1884 bis 1894* (Berlin. Pp. 212).
Revised ed. of a German transn. (1929) of the Cape Dutch text of a Khowsin chief's letterbook (1884-94), publd. in 1929. Linked by narrative passages. Cf. GUGELBERGER 1984.
Intrn.: mostly on present-day Namibian politics.
Apps.: notes on W, ethnic groups and persons.
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl. (poor).

LIST A: EDITIONS

RICARD, Robert: see BOURDON ET AL. 1960.

RICHARDS, Charles, ed.

- 1961 *Some Historic Journeys in East Africa* (London. Pp. x, 134).
 Anthology of extracts from J.Krapf (1860), C.New (1873),
 R.Burton (1860), J.Speke (1863), J.Grant (1864), S.Baker
 (1886), D. & C.Livingstone (1857, 1865), H.Stanley (1872),
 J.Thomson (1885), Count Teleki (1894), J.Gregory (1896).
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (sparse): names and Swahili words.
 Maps: 1 new.
 App.: biographies.

RICHARDS, Charles & PLACE, James, eds.

- 1960 *East African Explorers* (London. Pp. xxv, 356).
 Anthology of extracts from books on East Africa, inter-
 spersed with narrative. 10 = pre-1885: J.L.Krapf, C.New,
 D.Livingstone, H.Stanley, V.Cameron, R.Burton, J.Speke, J.Grant,
 S.Baker, J.Thomson.
 Intrn.
 Maps: 1 new.

RICHINGS, F.G.

- 1967 "The Cape journal of John Ramsden Wollaston, 1840-1851",
QESAL 21: 94-101.
 Trpn. of an extract from W's journal of his voyage to
 Australia.
 Intrn.
 Ann. (detailed).

RITCHIE, Carson I.A.

- 1967 "Impressions of Senegal in the 17th century", *African Studies*
 26: 59-93.
 Abridged English version of RITCHIE 1968.
 1968 "Deux textes sur le Sénégal (1673-1677)", *BIFAN* 30: 289-353.
 Trpn. of extracts from a ms. by Louis Moreau de Chamboneau
 (administrator and explorer).
 Ann. (detailed).

ROBERTS, R.S., ed.

- 1979 *Journey to Gubulawayo. Letters of Frs. H. Depelchin and*
C. Croonenberghs, S.J. 1879, 1880, 1881 (Bulawayo. Pp. xl, xi,
 375).
 Transn. (by Moira Lloyd) of *Trois ans dans l'Afrique australe*
 (1882-3), containing some letters of Jesuit missionaries
 among the Ndebele.
 Intrn.: the mission's history; the relationship
 between the original letters, those publ. in
Précis Historiques (1879-82), those in *Letters*
and Notices (1878 onwards, republd. in GELFAND
 1968) and the 1882 book.
 Ann.
 Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
 Index (poor): mainly persons.

LIST A: EDITIONS

ROBERTSON, H.M.: see SCHUTTE 1982.

ROBINSON, Anthony M. Lewin, ed.

- 1965-6 "James Bowie, botanical collector, reports to Sir Joseph Banks", *QBSAL* 20: 48-55, 89-93.
Trpn. of B's expenditure accounts + 2 letters, 1819-20.
Intrn.: Bowie at the Cape.
Ann.: only for the letters.
- 1966 Thomas Pringle: *Narrative of a Residence in South Africa* (Cape Town. Pp. xlv, 367).
Reprint of P's book (1834), referring to Albany + Cape Town.
Intrn.: biogr.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 2 old.
App.: biogr. notes on 85 persons; P's companions.
Index: general.
Bibl. (brief): bibliographical history.
- 1969 "An American girl at the Cape in 1834", *QBSAL* 23: 83-96.
Reprints an extract from Harriet Low's diary, publ. in Katherine Hillard, *My Mother's Journal* (1900).
Intrn.
Ann.
- 1973a *The Letters of Lady Anne Barnard to Henry Dundas from the Cape and Elsewhere, 1793-1803* (Cape Town. Pp. xv, 303).
Trpn. of LAB's letters; extract from her "Journal of a Tour into the Interior", publ. in *Lives of the Lindsays* (1849).
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Index: general.
- 1978 *Selected Articles from the Cape Monthly Magazine (New Series 1870-76)* (Cape Town. Pp. 297).
Mainly reminiscences of English people at the Cape, 1835 on.
Ann. (detailed).
App.: glossary (mostly Dutch words).
Maps: 1 old.
Index: general.
- 1979 intr. *A Fragment of Church History at the Cape of Good Hope* (Cape Town. Pp. iii, 89).
Facsimile of a pamphlet (1827), probably by Alexander Johnstone Jardine.
Intrn. (very brief).
- 1982 intr. *The Cape Town Gazette and African Advertiser, August 16, 1800 - October 19, 1801* (Cape Town. Pp. [280]).
Facsimile of the first 61 issues: English and Dutch versions.
Intrn. (brief), in English and Afrikaans.
Index (good): general.

ROBINSON, David & SMITH, Douglas, eds.

- 1979 *Sources of the African Past* (New York. Pp. xvi, 203).
Anthology of European and African sources for 19th c. Asante, Ganda, Hausa, Sotho and Zulu history. Maps, chronological tables, questions and reading lists to help students.
Intrn. and sub-intrns. (brief).
Index: general.

LIST A: EDITIONS

ROCHA, Leopoldo da

1973

"Uma informação inédita sobre Moçambique setecentista (1700-1703)", *Monumenta* 9: 19-30.

Trpn. of extract from Henrique Bravo de Moraes, "Continuam as Noticias do Arcebispado de Goa" (1726), describing the Cuama and Sofala rivers (Mozambique).

Intrn.

Ann.

ROCHLIN, S.A.

1960

"Andrew Wyley: A geologist's view of Cape life in 1857-8", *AN&N* 14, 4: 133-40.

Extracts from W's *Notes of a Journey* (1859).

Intrn.

RODRIGUES, José Honório, intr.

1963

Raimundo José da Cunha Matos: *Compêndio Histórico das Possessões de Portugal na África* (Rio de Janeiro. Pp. 364).

Trpn. of CM's ms. (ca. 1840?) - a historical survey of Portugal's African possessions.

Intrn.: CM's life and writings; the ms.

ROSA, Jorge A.P.: see NATIONAL ARCHIVES 1962-75.

ROSENTHAL, Eric, ed.

1969

Cape Directory 1800. Almanak vaan Kaapstad 1800 (Cape Town. Pp. v, 254).

Trpn. of the earliest *opgafrol* (list of householders and their residences) for Cape Town, reorganised alphabetically.

Intrn. (brief).

Maps: 1 old.

ROSENTHAL, Eric with DAVE, H.G.

1982

"The Cape in 1818: A new description found by Eric Rosenthal", *QBSAL* 36: 114-23.

Transn. of an extract from Adelbert von Chamisso, *Reise um die Welt...in den Jahren 1815-1818* (using the 1900 ed. of his complete works, first publ. in 1836-9).

Intrn.

Ann.

ROSS, Robert

1986

"The Dutch on the Swahili Coast, 1776-1778. Two slaving journals", *IJAHS* 19: 305-60 and 479-506.

Transn. of journals kept by Friedrich Holtzappel and Constant Onkruidt, on slaving voyages for the Dutch East India Company from the Cape of Good Hope to Zanzibar.

Intrn. (good): reasons for and results of the voyages; places/peoples mentioned; authors; ships; policy of transn./ann.

Ann.

Maps: 1 new.

LIST A: EDITIONS

ROSSIE, J.-P.: see THILMANS & ROSSIE 1969.

ROTBERG, R.I., intr.

- 1968a Joseph Thomson: *To the Central African Lakes and Back* (London. Pp. xviii, xxiv, 320, 323).
Facsimile of the 1881 ed., referring to Tanzania, 1879-80.
Intrn.: biogr.
- 1968b Joseph Thomson, *Through Masai Land* (London. Pp. xiii, 364).
Facsimile of 1887 ed. of T's book (1885). Cf. YOUNG 1962.
Intrn.: biogr.

ROURKE, John: see FORBES & ROURKE 1980.

ROUX, T.H.Le, ed.

- 1964 *Die dagboek van Louis Trigardt* (Pretoria. Pp. xxx, 275).
Trpn. of the diary of one of the principal trekkers, 1836-8
(first publ. 1917).
Intrn.: biogr.; the ms.; editorial policy; linguistic
aspects; the diary's value.
Ann. (detailed).
App.: glossary (good); 5 supplementary documents.
Bibl.

RUDNER, Jalmar & Ione, trans.

- 1968 J.F.Victorin: *Travels in the Cape. The Years 1853-1855*
(Cape Town. Pp. xiii, 125).
Transn. of a Swedish naturalist's book. No intrn.; no indica-
tion of original title or date of publication (Johan Frederik
V, *Resa i Kaplandet aren 1853-1855*, Stockholm 1863).

RYCROFT, David K.

- 1984 "An edited version of Dingana's eulogies", *African Studies*
43: 249-74.
Discusses an extract from Thomas Arbousset, *Relation d'un
voyage...au nord-est du Cap de Bonne Espérance* (1842),
containing a trpn. of a Zulu eulogy and a French transn.;
offers a modern Zulu transliteration and a tentative English
rendering.

RYDER, Allan F.C.

- 1969 *Benin and the Europeans, 1485-1897* (London. Pp. xi, 372).
App. (pp. 295-348): 9 documents (16th-18th c.), mostly un-
publd., including transns. from Portuguese, Castilian, Dutch.

SADJI, Uta, ed.

- 1980 *Cadamostos [=Cadamostos] Beschreibung von Westafrika. Der
Druck der deutschen Ausgabe von 1508* (Göppingen. Pp. 80).
Facsimile of the 1508 German ed. of his voyage to Upper
Guinea in 1455, *Newe unbekante landte und ein neue welde
in kurtz verganger zeythe erfunden*.
Postscript (brief): C; the book's contents; the
publication of the German transn.
Bibl. (brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

SADLER, Celia, ed.

1967

Never a Young Man. Extracts from the Letters and Journals of the Rev. William Shaw (Cape Town. Pp. 189).
Trpn. of the papers of a Wesleyan minister, 1820-72 (Eastern Cape).

Ann.: mainly identification of Europeans.

Maps: 1 new.

Apps.: 7 supplementary documents, 1835-48.

SALMON, P[ierre]

1960

"Mémoires de la relation de voyage de M. de Massiac à Angola et à Buenos-Aires", *Bulletin des Séances, Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer* (Brussels) VI, 4: 586-604.
Trpn. of a ms., probably a copy of notes made by a French merchant in Lisbon who met Barthélemy d'Espagnol de Massiac in 1661 after his voyage to Angola and Buenos Aires.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

SALVADORINI, Vittorio A.

1972

Le missioni a Benin e Warri nel XVII secolo: la relazione inedita di Bonaventura da Firenze (Varese. Pp. 314).

Trpn. of the diary of a Capuchin missionary sent to Warri (Itsekiri: Nigeria), 1656.

Intrn. (brief): mainly European background.

Ann. (detailed).

Apps.: 19 supplementary documents.

Bibl. (good).

#1973

"La relazione sul Congo di P. Bonaventura da Corella 1654", *Annali della Facoltà di Scienze Politiche dell'Università degli Studi di Pisa* III: 421-48.

?Summary/transn. of a Castilian text.

#1983

L'Angola nel XIX secolo (2 vols., Pisa. Pp. 209, 445).
Extracts from publd. sources, laws etc. (19th c. Angola).

SANDERS, James

1978

"Dawson's account of a mission to Nzima, August-September 1872", *Asantesem* 9: 63-9.

Trpn. of a diary kept by Joseph Dawson on the western Gold Coast.

Intrn.

SANDERSON, Georgel N., ed.

1961a

"Some notes on the distribution of the Nilotic peoples in the mid-19th century, by Fr. G. Beltrame", *SNR* 42: 118-21.

Transn. of extracts from the journal of a missionary, Giovanni Beltrame, who sailed up the White Nile in 1859.
Source not indicated.

1961b

"An impression of the Nuba and their country in 1875, by Fr. G. Martini", *SNR* 42: 122-6.

No intrn. or indication of the source; a few toponyms and ethnonyms identified in square brackets.

LIST A: EDITIONS

SANDILANDS, A., intr.

- n.d.[1977] "Kuruman to Morokweng in 1883. By Alfred James Gould",
Botswana Notes & Records 9: 49-54.
 Extract from an English missionary's diary, kept during the
 itineration of Kuruman village churches.

SANTANA, Francisco, ed.

- 1964,1967, *Documentação avulsa moçambicana do Arquivo Histórico Ultra-*
 1974 *marino* (3 vols., Lisbon. Pp. 1307; xv, 1240; viii, 1242).
 Calendar of documents on Mozambique, mainly 1827-33, with
 detailed descriptions of each, including verbatim extracts
 and lists of names and places mentioned. Each volume has a
 lengthy index (mainly names).

SANTI, Paul, ed.

- 1965 *Mémoire d'un voyage en Haute-Nubie en 1851 d'après un*
manuscrit anonyme (Beirut. Pp. 213).
 Trpn. of a notebook, perhaps by Jean-Alexandre Vayssière.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann.
 Maps: 2 old.

SANTI, Paul & HILL, Richard, eds.

- *1980 *The Europeans in the Sudan 1834-1878* (Oxford. Pp. xiv, 250).
 12 accounts/letters/journals, mostly unpubld., some in transn.
 (French/Italian).
 Intrn.; 10 sub-intrns.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Maps: 1 new.
 Index: persons, ethnic groups.

SANTOS, Eduardo dos

- 1976 *Angolana (Documentação sobre Angola), III (1845)* (Luanda. Pp.
 xcvi, 872).
 Trpn. of ca. 500 Portuguese documents on Angola, 1845. Cf.
 OLIVEIRA 1968, 1971.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (detailed).
 Index (good): general.
 Bibl.

SAUNDERS, [Christopher] C.

- 1979 "Through an African's eyes. The diary of Nathaniel Umhala",
QBSAL 34: 24-38.
 Reprints an excerpt from the *Cape Mercury* - the diary of
 Nathaniel Cyril Mhala, a Ngqika Xhosa, 1878.
 Intrn.
 1980 "Eliza's Cape Town, 1863", *QBSAL* 35: 50-58.
 Reprints an excerpt from *King William's Town Gazette &*
Kaffrarian Banner, 1863 - the account by "a Kaffir girl" of a
 visit to Cape Town.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (detailed).

See CORDEUR & SAUNDERS 1976, 1981; WILSON & PERROT 1971.

LIST A: EDITIONS

SAUTTER, Gilles: see BRUNSCHWIG 1966; COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969

SAUVAGEOT, Siérgel

- *1961 "Navigation de Lisbonne à l'île de São Tomé par un pilote portugais anonyme (vers 1545)", *Garcia de Orta* (Lisbon) 9: 123-38.
New transn. of an Italian text publd. in G.B.Ramusio, *Navigazioni e viaggi* (1550; 1st French transn. 1556); photos of whole text.
Intrn.
Ann. by Th.Monod and R.Mauny: much more detailed than in the transn. publd. by John W.Blake, 1942.
Maps: 1 new.
Bibl.

SCHAPERA, Isaac], ed.

- *1960 *Livingstone's Private Journals 1851-1853* (London. Pp. xxiv, 341).
- *1961 *Livingstone's Missionary Correspondence 1841-1856* (London. Pp. xxvi, 342).
- *1963 *Livingstone's African Journal 1853-1856* (2 vols., London. Pp. xxiii, vii, 495).
- *1974 *David Livingstone. South African Papers, 1849-1853* (Cape Town. Pp. 187).
Scholarly editions (trpn.) of L's papers. Each has:-
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
Index: general.
Bibl. (good).

SCHENETTI, Matteo

- 1978 *Nei regni del Congo. La vita e l'opera di Padre Giovanni Cavazzi da Montecuccolo* (Bologna. Pp. 139).
"Autobiography" of C, compiled from passages from his *Istorica descrizione de'tre Regni Congo, Matamba, et Angola* (1687).

SCHPEL, A.F., ed.

- 1978 *West Afrika 1857/1858: Reisjournaal van Lodewijk Kerdijk* (Schiedam. Pp. 228).
Trpn. of journal of a Dutch trader who visited various parts of the West African coast, as far down as the mouth of the Zaïre, as well as Fernando Poo.
Intrn.: mainly biogr.
Ann. (fairly detailed).
Maps: 5 old, 1 new.
Index: general.
Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

SCHIFFERS, Heinrich, ed.

- 1977 Heinrich Barth: *Die große Reise. Forschungen und Abenteuer in Nord- und Zentralafrika, 1849-1855* (Tübingen. Pp. 453).
Reprint (apparently abridged) of B's *Reisen und Entdeckungen in Nord- und Zentralafrika in den Jahren 1849-1855* (1855-8).
Intrn.
App.: B's itinerary, 1854.
Maps: 1 old, 6 new.
Bibl. (poor).
- 1978 Gustav Nachtigal: *Die Entdeckung der Riesenkrater und die erste Durchquerung des Sudan 1868-1874* (Tübingen. Pp. 432).
Apparently extracts from N's *Sahāra und Sūdān* (1878-89).
Omissions etc. not indicated.
Intrn.: mostly narrative. Several sub-intrns.
App.: chronological table, 1869-75.
Bibl. (poor).

SCHIFFERS, Heinrich & SIMONS, Peter, eds.

- 1983 Emin Pascha: *Gefahrvolle Entdeckungsreisen in Zentralafrika 1876-1892* (Stuttgart. Pp. 400).
Drastically abridged version (ca. 15% of the original length) of EP's (alias Eduard Schnitzer's) diaries (*Die Tagebücher von Dr. Emin Pascha*, ed. Franz Stuhlmann: 1916-27). Omissions not indicated.
Intrn.: mainly narrative.
Ann. (sparse).
Apps.: S as zoologist; S's letters to G.Hartlaub; contemporary descriptions of S; chronological tables (S's life in Africa; 19th c. exploration).
Maps: 1 old.
Bibl. (brief).

SCHINKEL, Ursula, ed.

- 1984 Mungo Park: *Reise in das Innere von Afrika: auf Veranstaltung der Afrikanischen Gesellschaft in den Jahren 1795-1797 unternommen von Mungo Park, Wundarzt* (Leipzig. Pp. 255).
Revised, abridged version of the 1799 German transn. of P's *Travels in the Interior Districts of Africa...* (publ. 1799).
Epilogue (brief): biogr.; simplified review of European activities in Africa.
Glossary (brief).

SCHMIDT, Sigrid

- 1979 "Auszüge aus dem Tagebuch 1815/16 des Missionars Heinrich Schmelen in Bethanien", *Namibiana* 1 (3): 53-68.
Trpn. of extracts from the journal of a LMS missionary at Bethanie (Namibia).
Intrn.
Ann. by Schmidt and K.F.R.BUDACK.

LIST A: EDITIONS

SCHOEMAN, Karel

- 1984 "Andrew Smith and the expedition into Central Africa: An account by two participants", *AN&N* 26, 4: 142-8.
Transn. of accounts publ. in *Berliner Missionsberichte* 1835, written by Gustav Adolf Kraut and August Gebel.
Ann.
- 1985 "'N reis na Thaba Nchu in 1835: 'n vroeë beskrywing van die Transoranje", *AN&N* 26, 5: 176-80.
Afrikaans transn. of an account of a journey from Bethanie to what is now Ladybrand, written by the missionary G.Gebel and publ. in *Berliner Missionsberichte* 1836.
Intrn.
Ann.

SCHUBARTH-ENGELSCHALL, Karl, ed.

- 1984 Johann Leo Africanus: *Beschreibung Afrikas* (Leipzig. Pp. 240).
Extracts (modernised German) from the 1805 German transn. of JLA's (= El-Hassan Ibn Mohammed el-Wassan es-Sajjati) description of Africa, publ. in Italian, 1550. S-E used the 1956 French ed. to "correct" the orthography of names, inserted sub-headings and added Christian dates to JLA's Islamic ones.
Intrn.: historical background; biogr.
App.: glossary (brief).

SCHUTTE, G.J., ed.

- 1970 "Ben vergeten pamflet: De Apologie van R.J.Gordon", *Historia* 15: 100-107.
Transn. of a pamphlet, *Apologie de Robert de Gordon, ci-devant Commandant général des troupes du Cap de Bonne Espérance. Par un de ses amis* (1796).
Intrn.
Ann.
- *1982 *Briefwisseling van Hendrik Swellengrebel Jr. oor Kaapse Sake 1778-1792* (Cape Town. Pp. 462).
Trpn. of a Dutchman's correspondence with members of the Cape elite.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
English summary (half the length of the original) by A.J.BÖSEKEN, aided by H.M.Robertson.
Apps.: glossary (old Dutch words); weights and measures; currency.
Index: names (& index to the English summary).
Bibl. (good).

LIST A: EDITIONS

SCHWAR, J.F. & JARDINE, R.W., eds.

- 1975 *The Letters and Journal of Gustav Steinbart, German Military Colonist to British Kaffraria, Cape Province, South Africa. Vol. 1: The Letters, 6 October 1855 - 23 May 1858* (Port Elizabeth. Pp. x, 206).
 Trpn. (German) and parallel transn.; refers to Eastern Cape.
 Intrn. (brief): the British German Legion in South Africa.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Maps: 1 old, 1 new.
 App.: transn. of reminiscences of British Kaffraria by Alfred von Mauntz (publd. 1909).

SCHYFF, P.F. van der: see SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

SCOTT, J.B., ed.

- 1967 "A naval officer's journal, 1861", *Historia* 12: 250-61.
 Trpn. of journal of Surgeon Lieut. R.W.Brigstocke, R.N., referring to the Cape and the mouth of the Zambezi.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann.
 #1970 *Letter Book of Sir Rufane Shaw Donkin* (Port Elizabeth).
 D was Acting Governor at the Cape, 1820-21.

SEGOVIA, J. Castro: see BONTINCK & SEGOVIA 1972.

SELICKS, P.W.M.: see ROBINSON 1973.

SELLKE, Hartmut, ed.

- 1971 *Schwäbische Weltenbummler* (Heidenheim. Pp. 144).
 Includes extracts from Andreas Ulsheimer (17th c. ms. on the W.African coast, publd. 1879: cf. JONES 1983) and Carl Mauch (description of Zimbabwe ruins, publd. 1869-72: cf. BURKE 1969).
 Sub-intrn. (brief) for each author.
 Index: names.

SERTON, P.: see RAIDT 1971-3.

SHELL, Robertl., ed.

- 1984 "S.E.Hudson's 'Slaves'", *Kronos. Mededeling van die West-Kaaplandse Instituut vir Historiese Navorsing* (Bellville, South Africa) 9: 44-70.
 Trpn. of a South African slave-owner's essay, ca. 1803-6.
 Intrn.
 Ann. (detailed).
 1985 "Auctions - their good and evil tendency", *QBSAL* 39: 147-51 and 40: 12-18.
 Trpn. of another essay by Samuel E. Hudson, written between 1796 and 1806; refers to Cape Town.
 Intrn. (very brief).
 Ann.

LIST A: EDITIONS

SHEPPERSON, Georgel, ed.

1965

David Livingstone and the Rovuma (Edinburgh. Pp. 204).
Trpn. of L's notebook of his 3rd attempt to find a navigable path to Lake Malawi via the Rovuma, 1862-3. Many photos of the ms.

Intrn. (good).

Ann.

Apps.: Trpn. of L's Rovuma despatches, 1862; logbook of *H.M.S. Orestes*, 1861-5; extracts from L's *Narrative of an Expedition to the Zambesi* (1865).

Maps: 1 new (inaccurate in its depiction of L's routes).

Bibl. (brief).

SILLANS, Roger: see BRUNSCHWIG 1966; COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969

SIMON, William J.

#1976

"A Luso-African formulary of the late 18th century", *Pharmacy in History* 18, 3: 103-14.
Refers to Angola.

SIMONS, Peter: see SCHIFFERS & SIMONS 1983.

SIMONS, Tanya: see WILSON & PERROT 1971.

SIMPSON, Donald H., intr.

1968

Horatio Bridge: *Journal of an African Cruiser* (London. Pp. 179).

Reprint of Nathaniel Hawthorne, ed., *Journal of an African Cruiser. By an Officer of the U.S. Navy* (1845). Refers to Liberia and Gold Coast.

Intrn. (brief).

1969

Lieut. Barnard: *A Three Years Cruise in the Mozambique Channel* (London. Pp. xxxiv, 319).

Facsimile of Frederick L. B's book (1848), mainly on the Mozambique coast, 1842-6.

Intrn.: biogr.

Apps.: list of officers of H.M.S. Cleopatra; chronological summary of where she went.

Maps: 1 old (not in the original).

SKELTON, Raleigh: see QUINN & SKELTON 1965.

SMIT, D.E., intr.

1975

J. Suasso de Lima: *Geschiedenis van de Kaap de Goede Hoop* (Cape Town. Pp. iii, 100).

Facsimile of a pamphlet by a Dutch settler at Cape Town (1825).

Intrn. (very brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

SMITH, Alison, intr.

- 1971 Charles New: *Life, Wanderings, and Labours in Eastern Africa* (Portland. Pp. 30, xii, 525).
Reprint of the 1873 ed., describing the travels of a missionary, 1860s-70s.
Intrn.

SMITH, Anna, ed.

- 1960 Donald Moodie: *The Record; or, A Series of Official Papers Relative to the Condition and Treatment of the Native Tribes of South Africa* (Cape Town. Pp. viii, 446, 112, 60, 39).
Facsimile of a collection made by the Colonial Secretary for Natal, publd. 1838-41.
Intrn. (brief).
Index (good): general.

SMITH, H.F.C.: see CURTIN 1967.

SMUTS, J.: see BÖESEKEN 1970.

SMYTHE, Mabel M., ed.

- 1976 Théophilus Conneau: *A Slaver's Log Book, or 20 Years' Residence in Africa* (Englewood Cliffs, N.J.; pp. ?).
Trpn. (not wholly reliable) of the ms. of C (alias Théodore Canot), which served as the basis for Brantz Mayer, *Captain Canot; Or, Twenty Years of an African Slaver* (1854). Cf. List B: MOUSER 1979; JONES 1981.
Intrn. (poor): moralising remarks.
Ann. (sparse): shows little knowledge of Africa.

SOUTO, A. Meyrelles do [alias António Meireles Souto?]

- #1962 "Historia dos Cercos de Moçambique. Um manuscrito desconhecido: Autor e narrativa portuguesas", *Anais* 11, Serie 13: 11-33.
- 1963 "Hystorya dos Cercos que os Olandezes puzerão à Fortaleza de Mozambique o Anno de 607 e 608", *Stvdia* 12: 463-548.
Trpn. of a document by Antonio Durão, 1609; refers to 1607-8.
Intrn.
Ann. (mainly textual points).

SPOHR, O.H., ed.

- #1964 *Detained in Simon's Bay. The story of the detention of the Imperial Russian sloop Diana from April 1808 to May 1809* (Cape Town).
Transn. from Russian (by Lisa MILLNER).
- 1965 *The Natal Diaries of Dr. W.H.I. Bleek 1855-1856* (Cape Town. Pp. ix, 117).
Transn. of the diaries (publd./unpubld.) of a German linguist/ethnographer.
Intrn.: biogr.; editorial policy.
Maps: 1 old.
Index: names.
Bibl. (B's writings).

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1966 "A description of Cape Town and its way of life, 1838-40",
QBSAL 21: 2-12, 39-50.
Transn. of a ms. by Ferdinand Krauss, a German naturalist.
Intrn.
Ann.
Bibl.: K's publications on South Africa.
 - 1967a "The first Danish-German missionaries at the Cape of Good
Hope, 1706", *QBSAL* 21: 112-21.
Transn. of extracts from *Merckwürdige Nachricht aus Ost-
Indien* (1708), describing the experiences of Bartholomäus
Ziegenbalg and Heinrich Plütscho, 1706; linked by narrative
passages.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
 - 1967b *Zacharias Wagner, Second Commander of the Cape* (Cape Town.
Pp. viii, 103).
Transn. from German of extracts (with photos of the original
pages) from Z's "animal book" of Brazil (ms., referring
partly to African slaves) and his brief journal (1633-68,
partly on the Cape).
Intrn.: biogr.; the mss.; the pictures.
Ann.
Maps: 1 old.
Index: general.
 - 1969 F.Krauss: "The Natal Voortrekkers and their War with the
Zulu", *Historia* 14: 22-42.
Transn. of an article by Ferdinand K (cf. SPOHR 1966), publ.
in German in *Das Ausland*, 1841; refers to 1834-40.
Intrn.
 - #1970 Count de las Cases: *My Residence at the Cape; being an
Extract from Volume IV of the Journal of Count de las Cases*
(Cape Town).
 - 1973 W(=Ml.H.C.Lichtenstein: *Foundation of the Cape. About the
Bechuanas* (Cape Town. Pp. viii, 113).
Transn. of an unpubl. history with which L intended to
preface his *Reisen im südlichen Afrika* (1811-12) and of an
ethnographic essay on the Tswana, *über die Beetjuanas*, publ.
1807.
Intrn. (good).
Ann.
Maps: 1 old.
Index: mostly names.
Bibl.
- SPOHR, O.H. & CROWHURST, A.W., eds.
1969 "The Zulu, by Ferdinand Krauss", *AN&N* 18, 5: 201-20.
Transn. of a German article, publ. 1841.
Intrn.
- SPURRELL, Mark: see MARTIN & SPURRELL 1962.

LIST A: EDITIONS

STANLEY, Richard & NEAME, Alan, eds.

- 1961 *The Exploration Diaries of H.M. Stanley* (London. Pp. xxi, 208).
Trpn. of extracts from the records of S's 2nd Central African expedition, 1874-7; linked by brief editorial narrative.
Intrn.: the mss. and their discovery; the explorer; the expedition; places, people; the edition.
Maps: 1 new.
Indexes ("selective", i.e. poor): 1 of persons, 1 of places, 1 of ships, 1 of publications.

STELLA, Angelo: see BASSANI 1978.

SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE / SOUTH AFRICAN ARCHIVAL RECORDS

- 1960-82 Important series of volumes containing trpn. of official documents (council resolutions etc.), each with intrn. (brief: editorial policy etc.), ann., index/indexes (good: general):-
Notule van die Volksraad van die Oranje-Vrystaat:
III (1858), ed. D.C.JOUBERT (Parow 1960. Pp. xx, 575).
IV (1859), ed. P.F.van der SCHYFF (Cape Town 1965. Pp. xxii, 401).
V (1860-61), ed. S.P.R.OOSTHUIZEN (Pretoria 1982. Pp. xxi, 437).
Records of the Natal Executive Council:
II (1846-8) (Cape Town 1960. Pp. xxii, 374).
III (1849-52), ed. B.A.Le CORDEUR (Cape Town 1962. Pp. xix, 403).
IV (1853-6), ed. idem & V.R.FOURIE (Cape Town 1963. Pp. xvi, 344).
V (1856-9), ed. V.R.FOURIE & L.J.TWYMAN (Cape Town 1964. Pp. xx, 443).
Notule van die Volksraad van die Suid-Afrikaanse Republiek:
VII (Transvaal 1867-8), ed. D.J.JOUBERT (Cape Town 1966. Pp. xvi, 302).
Kaap. Resolusies van die Politieke Raad
(Each volume has a good glossary):
III (1681-1707), ed. A.J.BÖESEKEN (Cape Town 1961. Pp. xxiii, 494).
#IV (1707-15), ed. idem (Cape Town 1962. Pp. xx, 516).
#V (1716-19), ed. G.C.de WET (Cape Town 1964. Pp. xxiii, 434).
VI (1720-23), ed. idem (Johannesburg 1968. Pp. xviii, 436).
VII (1724-8), ed. idem (Johannesburg 1971. Pp. xxviii, 534).
VIII (1729-34), ed. idem (Pretoria 1975. Pp. xxv, 452).

SUTTON, J.E.G., ed.

- 1970 "Early Dar es Salaam, as seen by foreign visitors", *Tanzania Notes & Records* 71: 201-13.
7 extracts from publd./unpubld. sources: one is translated from French and has ann.

LIST A: EDITIONS

SWIFT, Jeremy, intr.

- 1983 *Mungo Park: Travels into the Interior of Africa* (London. Pp. xviii, 388).
 Facsimile of Ronald Miller's 1954 ed. of P's *Travels in the Interior Districts of Africa* (1798) and *Journal of a Mission...* (1815), with a partly new apparatus.
 Intrn. (brief): says nothing new.
 Maps: 1 new.
 App.: glossary (same as in KEAY 1984).

TABLER, Edward C.

- 1960 *Zambezia and Matabeleland in the Seventies. The Narrative of Frederick Hugh Barber 1875 and 1877-8 and The Journal of Richard Frewen 1877-1878* (London. Pp. xi, 212).
 Trpn. of 2 mss. (B's was written after 1895).
 Intrns. (brief) to each journal.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Apps.: 3 supplementary documents by F, 1877; correction of 2 mis-statements by F; summary of 2 letters from F, 1877.
 Maps: 2 new.
 Index: general.
 Bibl.
- 1963a *Trade and Travel in Early Barotseland. The Diaries of George Westbeech 1885-1888 and Capt. Norman Macleod 1875-1876. Illustrated with the Sketches of Lieutenant William Fairlie* (London. Pp. xii, 125).
 Trpn. of the diaries of an English trader and a Scottish traveller/hunter.
 Intrn.: mostly narrative.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Maps: 2 new.
 Index: general.
 Bibl.
- *1963b *The Zambezi Papers of Richard Thornton* (London. 2 vols., Pp. xxii, 360).
 Trpn. of papers of the geologist to Livingstone's Zambezi expedition (1858-63).
 Intrn. (good).
 Ann. (detailed).
 App.: list of T's Zambezi papers.
 Maps: 5 new.
 Index: mostly names and animals.
 Bibl.
- 1966a "Major Stabb's description of Lobengula and the Matabele, 1875", *AN&N* 17, 4: 166-78.
 Trpn. of an essay by Henry Stabb.
- 1966b "The diary of Alfred Cross at Old Bulawayo and to the Victoria Falls, 1875", *Rhodesiana* 15: 26-36.
 Trpn. of the diary of a hunter/trader in Matabeleland.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann.: mainly identification of Europeans.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- 1967 *To the Victoria Falls via Matabeleland. The Diary of Major Henry Stabb, 1875* (Cape Town. Pp. xii, 268).
Trpn. of the diary of a trek from British Kaffraria to Matabeleland.
Intrn. (brief): mainly biogr./narrative.
Ann.
Maps: 1 new.
Index (poor): names.
- 1969 Captain William Cornwallis Harris: *Portraits of the Game & Wild Animals of Southern Africa* (Cape Town. Pp. xxii, 196).
Facsimile of the 1840/41 ed. (illustrations and text).
Intrn.: biogr.; the illustrations; bibliographical history.
App.: zoological note (brief) by Richard LIVERSIDGE.
- 1971a *James Chapman, Traveller in the Interior of South Africa 1849-63* (2 vols., Cape Town. Pp. xiii, 258; xiii, 244).
C's diaries were heavily cut before publ. in 1868; Tabler, using the ms., restores omitted sections but omits parts of the 1868 ed. (without always indicating this).
Intrn. (brief): biographical; editorial principles.
Ann.
App.: C's letters to Sir George Grey, 1861-9.
Maps: 1 old.
Index: names.
Bibl. (brief).
- 1971b *Sport and Service in South Africa. The Diary of Lieutenant Robert Arkwright, 1843-1846* (Cape Town. Pp. 98).
Trpn. of the diary of a subaltern in the British cavalry, referring to the Eastern Cap and its hinterland.
Intrn. (brief): biogr.; the ms.; editorial policy.
Ann.
Index: names.
Bibl. (brief).

TABLER, Edward C., AXELSON, Eric & KATZ, Elaine W., eds.

- #1982 *Baines on the Zambesi 1858 to 1859* (Sanditon. Pp. 251).
Trpn. of the journal of Thomas B, the official artist and storekeeper on Livingstone's expedition up the Zambesi; based on his diaries and sketches; includes 72 reproductions.
Intrn.
Ann.
App.
Maps
Index
Bibl.

TAILLEMITT, Etienne: see BRUNSCHWIG 1966.

TALBOT, C.J.: see GORDON & TALBOT 1983.

LIST A: EDITIONS

TEDESCHI, Salvatore

- 1966 "Poncet et son voyage en Ethiopie", *Journal of Ethiopian Studies* IV, 2: 99-126.
Compares the publ. and ms. accounts of J.C.Poncet's visit to Ethiopia at the end of the 17th c., quoting extracts.

TEYSSIER, Paul, ed.

- 1968 "Textes portugais sur les Wolofs au XV^e siècle", *BIFAN* 30: 822-46.
Transn. by José Gonçalves of documents publ. by BRÁSIO (MMA) on the baptism of Bemol, a Wolof prince, in 1488.
Intrn. (brief) by V. Montell.
Ann.

THÉSÈE, F.

- 1985 "Au Sénégal, en 1789. Traite des nègres et société africaine dans les royaumes de Sallum, de Sin et de Cayor", *CITN* I No. 33 (pp. 15).
Trpn. of extracts from 4 letters of Thomas Clarkson to Mirabeau, with information on Senegal obtained from Geoffrey de Villeneuve, who had spent 2 years at Gorée.
Intrn.

THILMANS, Guy

- *1971 "Le Sénégal dans l'oeuvre d'Olfried Dapper", *BIFAN* 33: 508-63.
New transn. of the section on Senegal in Olfert Dapper, *Naukeurige beschrijvinge der afrikaensche gewesten* (1668).
Intrn. (good): criticises existing transns.;
assesses D's value as a source.
Ann. (detailed).
- 1975 "Les planches sénégalaises et mauritaniennes des 'Atlas Vingboons'", *BIFAN* 37: 95-116.
Discusses and reproduces 8 plates relating to Senegambia from the 17th c. Dutch "Vingboons atlases".
- *1976 "La relation de François de Paris (1682-1683)", *BIFAN* 38: 1-51.
Trpn. of an account of a voyage to Senegal and Gambia.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).

See DEBIEN ET AL. 1978.

THILMANS, Guy & MORAES, Nize Isabel de

- *1970 "Le routier de la côte de Guinée de Francisco Pirez de Carvalho (1635)", *BIFAN* 32: 343-70.
Text of a Portuguese ms. (publd. 1635, 1962) with parallel transn.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
Maps: 1 new.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- *1972 "La description de la côte de Guinée du père Baltasar Barreira (1606)", *BIFAN* 34: 1-50.
Trpn. (Portuguese) of B's description of Senegal (in a letter of August 1606, also transcribed as Appendix 9 in MOTA 1969) and transn.
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (detailed).
- *1977a "Le passage à la Petite Côte du vice-amiral d'Estrées", *BIFAN* 39: 37-80.
Trpn. of 2 memoranda by d'E, who visited Senegal in 1670 and 1677, and of 2 related documents.
Intrn.
Ann. (detailed).
- *1977b "Les passages à la Petite Côte de Pieter van den Broecke (1606-1609)", *BIFAN* 39: 470-92.
Transn. of the Senegal section in VdB's ms. (publd. in K.Ratelband, ed., *Reizen naar West-Afrika van Pieter van den Broecke, 1605-1614*, 1950).
Intrn. (good).
Ann. (dedetailed).
- 1979 "Sur quelques campagnes négrières françaises effectués par des particuliers avant 1680", *BIFAN* 41: 447-77.
Discusses 9 French slaving voyages, 1669-79, giving a trpn. of 17 documents (2 = transns. from Spanish) and the text of a document publ. in 1568.
Ann.
- THILMANS, Guy & ROSSIE, Jean-Pierre]**
*1969 "Le Flambeau de la Navigation de Dierick Ruiters", *BIFAN* 31: 106-19.
Transn. of the Senegal section in R's *Toortse der Zee-vaert* (1623).
Intrn.
Ann.
- TOIT, A.E. du, ed.**
#1963 *The Earliest South African Documents on the Education and Civilisation of the Bantu* (Pretoria. Pp. 91).
- TOIT, André du & GILIONE, Hermann**
1983 *Afrikaner Political Thought: Analysis and Documents*. Vol. 1: 1780-1850 (Cape Town. Pp. xxx, 309).
Anthology of 73 extracts from publ. documents on South Africa.
Intrn.; 5 sub-intrns. (good).
Index: names of sources.
Bibl. (brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

TONIOLO, Elias & HILL, Richard, eds.

1975

The Opening of the Nile Basin: Writings by Members of the Catholic Mission to Central Africa on the Geography and Ethnography of the Sudan 1842-1881 (New York. Pp. x, 330). Transn. of 17 extracts from the writings (all but 2 of them already publ.) of 13 missionaries.

Intrn. (mainly narrative); 17 sub-intrns. (good).

Ann.

Maps: 2 old, 1 new.

Index: general.

TOSO, Carlo

#1973

Relazioni inedite di P. Bonaventura Rebaudo da Ceriana sulla missione "ne' Regni di Congo, Angola e luoghi adiacenti" (Rome).

1974

"Relazioni inedito di P. Cherubino Cassinis da Savona sul 'Regno del Congo e sue Missioni'", *L'Italia Francescana* 49: 135-214 and 50: 94-139.

Monograph on CCdS and the Capuchin mission, discussing in detail some Capuchin ms. reports on Congo, 1759-65. Pp. 207-14: Annotated trpn. of a ms. by CCdS, 1775 (cf. the French transn. in JADIN 1963); detailed analysis of the text, linking it to contemporary sources and recent research.

#1976

Il Congo nella seconda metà del secolo XVIII. Il "Breve ragguaglio" di P. Cherubino da Savona (Rome).

The same as TOSO 1974?

1977

"L'Informazione sul regno del Congo' di Raimondo da Dicomano", *L'Italia Francescana* 52: 299-375.

Transn. of the Portuguese account of a Capuchin missionary to Kongo (1791-5), publ. by Jadin in French transn. in 1957 and in Portuguese in BRASIO 1972.

Intrn.: mainly narrative.

Ann. (detailed).

Apps.: 12 supplementary Italian/Portuguese documents (1790-1803); detailed ann.

1979

"La 'Missio antiqua' e la 'narratione' inedita del genovese Pietro da Dolcedo", *L'Italia Francescana* 54: 179-214, 309-54, 437-98.

Trpn. of an account of the stay of 4 Genoese Capuchins in Kongo, 1643-7.

Intrn.: mainly narrative.

Ann.: detailed.

1984

L'anarchia congolese nel secolo XVII: la relazione inedita di Marcellino d'Atri (Genoa. Pp. lxiv, 418).

Trpn. of the account of a Capuchin missionary to Congo at the end of the 17th c. (cf. the French transn. in CUVELIER 1960).

Intrn. (good): the ms. and its composition.

Ann. (detailed).

Maps: 1 new.

Indexes (good): 1 persons, 1 places, 1 things.

Bibl. (good).

LIST A: EDITIONS

TRACEY, Hugh

1968

"Antonio Fernandes, Rhodesia's first pioneer", *Rhodesiana* 19: 1-26.

Reproduces E.Axelsson's transn. (1939) of a ms. by Gaspar Veloso (ca. 1515-16), describing 2 journeys by AF inland from Sofala; discusses its significance.

Maps: 3 old, 1 new.

TRUTENAU, H.M.J., ed.

#1971

Christian Protten: *Introduction to the Fante and Gã Languages* (1764) (London. Pp. ?).

Reprint of the original Danish text (*En nyttig grammaticalsk Indledning til tvende hidindtil gandske unbekiende Sprog, Fanteisk og Acraisk...*), with an English transn. and a modern version of the Gã.

App.: transn. of J. Capitein's Fante catechism, 1744.
Index.

TUBIANA, Joseph

1961

"Deux fragments inédits du tome second de *Douze ans dans la Haute-éthiopie* d'Arnauld d'Abbadie", *Rocznik Orientalistyczny* XXV, 2: 27-85.

Trpn. of extracts from the ms. later publ. in full (ALLIER 1980, 1983).

Intrn.: the ms.; d'A; editorial policy.

Ann.: mainly textual points.

TWYMAN, L.J.: see SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82.

VAN DANTZIG, Albert: see DANTZIG.

VAN JAARSVELD, F.A.: see JAARSVELD.

VANSINA, Jan: see BRUNSCHWIG 1972; COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969

VANTIN, G.: see HUBER & DELLAGIACOMA 1973.

VARLEY, Douglas H., ed.

1960-61

"A Russian view of the Cape in 1853", *QBSAL* 15: 48-76, 83-111, 134-52; 16: 31-48.

Transn. (by N.W.Wilson) of extracts from Ivan Alexandrovich Goncharov, *Fregat Pallada* (1856).

Intrn.

Ann.

VARLEY, Douglas & Vera, eds.

#1962

An Adventure at the Cape of Good Hope in December, 1672, by Jan Pietersz. Cortemünde (Cape Town. Pp. iv, 29).

Transn. of an extract from a ms. (German/Danish?) originally transcribed and edited by Henning Henningsen (first publ. as *Dagbog fra en Ostindiefahrt, 1672-75*: 1953).

Intrn.

Ann.

LIST A: EDITIONS

VELHO, Alvaro, ed.

- 1967-8 "Roteiro da primeira viagem de Vasco da Gama (1497-1499)",
Monumenta 3 (#) & 4: 49-55.
 Trpn. of a journal describing the Mozambique coast.
 Ann. (detailed).

VERGER, Pierre

- 1968 "Les côtes d'Afrique occidentale entre 'Rio Volta' et 'Rio
 Lagos' (1535-1773)", *Journal de la Société des Africanistes*
 38: 35-58.
 Reprints 31 maps of the Slave Coast, 1535-1773; presents
 some of the toponyms in tabular form.
 Intrn.: discusses the progress in cartography of
 the region in this period.
 Maps: 1 new.

VIGNE, R.

- 1979 "To Middelburg from the Bay: Ben Pryor's ox-wagon journey in
 1859", *AN&N* 23, 5: 179-90.
 Trpn. of letters by Benjamin Pryor, a teacher on his way
 from England to Middelburg (South Africa).
 Intrn.
 Ann. (detailed).

VOGT, John

- 1973 "Portuguese gold trade: An account ledger from Elmina, 1529-
 31", *THSG* 14: 93-104.
 Transn. and discussion of a ms.
 1974 "Private trade and slave sales at São Jorge da Mina: A 15th
 century document", *THSG* 15: 103-10.
 Transn. and discussion of a 1499 document; compares it with
 a *regimento* of 1529.

"VACHELET", intr.

- 1968 John George Cox R.N.: *Cox and the Juju Coast. A Journal
 Kept aboard H.M.S. Fly 1868/9* (St. Helier. Pp. xxv, 88).
 Trpn. of an uninformative journal (voyage to the Bight of
 Benin).
 Intrn.: abolition of slave trade; naval aspects.
 Ann. (detailed): mainly naval.
 Maps: 2 new.
 App.: list of ships.
 Index: names.

WAHL, John Robert, ed.

- 1970 Thomas Pringle: *Poems Illustrative of South Africa. African
 Sketches, Part 1* (Cape Town. Pp. xxx, 180).
 Anthology of P's poems, based on his stay in the valley of
 the Baviaans R. and at Cape Town, 1820-26.
 Intrn.: biogr.; P's poetry.
 Ann.
 App.: textual history of the poems.

LIST A: EDITIONS

W[ALLS], A[ndrew] F., ed.

- 1965 "A second narrative of Samuel Ajayi Crowther's early life",
Bulletin of the Society for African Church History 2, 1: 5-14.
 Trpn. of a letter written by C during the Niger expedition (1841), complementing a different account publ. in 1837.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (1 note).

WARD, W[illiam] E.F., ed.

- 1966a T. Edward Bowdich: *Mission from Cape Coast Castle to Ashantee* (London. Pp. 71, viii, 512).
 Facsimile of the 1st ed., 1819.
 Intrn.: compares the book's statements with a few PRO documents on the expedition.
 Ann.: sparse, considering how rich B's ethnographic material is.
- 1966b Joseph Dupuis: *Journal of a Residence in Ashantee* (London. Pp. 64, xxxvii, 264, cxxvi).
 Facsimile of the 1st ed., 1824.
 Intrn.: includes trpn. of extracts from D's letters; emphasis on diplomatic events.
 Ann.: rather sparse.
 Maps: 1 new.

WARNER, Brian & Nancy, eds.

- 1984 MacLear & Herschel: *Letters & Diaries at the Cape of Good Hope, 1834-1838* (Cape Town. Pp. xiii, 248).
 Trpn. of writings of the astronomers Thomas MacLear and Sir John Herschel.
 Intrn. (brief): location and treatment of sources.
 Sub-intrn. to each of the 6 chapters (biographical/narrative).
 Ann.
 Apps.: biographical notes on c. 200 persons; geographical details of M's voyage, 1833-4.
 Index: general.
- 1985 *The Journal of Lady Jane Franklin at the Cape of Good Hope, November 1836: "Keeping up the Character"* (Cape Town. Pp. 76).
 Trpn. (omitting material from publ. sources).
 Intrn.: biogr.
 Ann. (detailed).
 Index: mainly names.
 Bibl.

LIST A: EDITIONS

WATERFIELD, Gordon, ed.

1966

Sir Richard Burton: *First Footsteps in East Africa* (London. Pp. xiv, 320).

Reprint of the 1894 memorial ed., with some amendments based on B's notes in his own copy of the 1856 original; some notes and appendices omitted.

Intrn.: editorial policy; biogr. (detailed).

Ann.

Maps: 2 old (1 redrawn), 3 new.

Apps.: B's plans for a Zanzibar expedition; B attacked in official reports; the story told by the Somali; excision and infibulation.

Index: general.

WATERHOUSE, Gilbert, intr.

1979

Simon van der Stel's Journey to Namaqualand in 1685 (Cape Town. Pp. 431).

Trpn. and transn. (by [G.C.] de WET and R.H.PHEIFFER respectively) of VdS's journal (Dutch), 1685-6, with facsimile of the whole original ms.

Intrn. (a revised version of W's intrn. to his ed. of the same journal, publ. in 1932): the ms., its history, the 2 versions; early Dutch settlement at the Cape; the drawings; principles of trpn.

WET, G.C. de: see SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82; WATERHOUSE 1979.

WIDSTRAND, Carl: see KUP 1967.

WILEY, Bell I., ed.

*1980

Slaves No More: Letters from Liberia, 1833-1869 (Lexington. Pp. viii, 349).

Trpn. of 273 letters from ex-slaves sent from America to Liberia.

Intrn.

Ann. (detailed).

Maps: 1 new.

Index: general.

Bibl. note.

WILKS, Ivor: see CURTIN 1967.

WILLIAMS, Donovan, ed.

1983

The Journals and Selected Writings of The Reverend Tiyo Soga (Cape Town. Pp. 221).

Trpn. of papers (1857-71) of a black missionary in Kaffria; transn. of Xhosa articles and hymns by him (1860s).

Intrn. + sub-intrns.: biogr.; the mss.; editorial policy.

Ann.

Maps: 1 new.

App.: genealogy.

Index: general.

Bibl. (brief).

LIST A: EDITIONS

WILLIS, John Ralph, intr.

- 1966 William D. Cooley: *The Negroland of the Arabs Examined and Explained; or, An Inquiry into the Early History and Geography of Central Africa* (London. Pp. xii, 143).
Facsimile of the 1st ed., 1841: no primary material, but indicates how 19th c. Englishmen thought about Africa.
Intrn. (brief).
Bibl. (good): C's sources and more recent works.
- 1967 William Bosman: *A New and Accurate Description of the Coast of Guinea* (London. Pp. xxi, 509, lxvi).
Facsimile of the 1705 ed., a transn. of Willem B's *Nauwkeurige beschryving van de Guinese Goud-, Tand- en Slave-kust* (1704): for the weakness of the transn. see DANTZIG 1975-84.
Intrn. (poor).
Ann. by J.D.Fage and R.E.Bradbury: useful but sparse.
Maps: 1 old (edited).

WILSON, Francis & PERROT, Dominique, eds.

- 1971 *Outlook on a Century: South Africa 1870-1970* (Lovedale. Pp. xx, 746).
Anthology of articles from the "South African Outlook" (founded at Lovedale, 1870).
Intrn. (brief).
Maps: 2 new.
App.: notes on contributors, by Tanya SIMONS and Christopher SAUNDERS.
Index (good): general.

WILSON, Kenneth

- 1974 "Livingstone, Potgieter and the Rev. Edward Solomon", *QBSAL* 28: 84-8.
Trpn. of a letter by S, 1843.
Intrn.

WILSON, H.V.: see VARLEY 1960-61.

WINSNES, Selena, ed.

- 1986 Paul E. Isert: *Journey to Guinea and the Caribbean Islands* (M.Phil. thesis, University of Birmingham).
Transn. of I's *Reise nach Guinea und den Caribäischen Inseln in Columbien* (1788), referring to the eastern Gold Coast and western Slave Coast.
Intrn.
Ann.
Apps.: 5 supplementary documents.
Bibl. (good).

WOLF, James B., ed.

- 1971 *Missionary to Tanganyika, 1877-1888. The Writings of Edward Coode Hore, Master Mariner* (London. Pp. 193).
Extracts (omissions indicated) from publd. and unpubld. writings of a LMS missionary (Lake Tanganyika) and from his wife Annie's *To Lake Tanganyika in a Bath Chair*, 1886.

LIST A: EDITIONS

- Intrn.: biogr.; H's personality. 6 sub-intrns.
 Ann. (sparse).
 App.: a contemporary description of H.
 Index: general
 Bibl.
- 1976 *The Central African Diaries of Walter Hutley, 1877 to 1881*
 (Boston. Pp. xiv, 299).
 Trpn. of a diary on the LMS's first expedition to Lake
 Tanganyika.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (sparse).
- WRIGHT, Harrison M.**, intr.
 1968 Thomas Birch Freeman: *Journal of Various Visits to the*
Kingdoms of Ashanti, Aku, and Dahomi in Western Africa
(1844) (London. Pp. xxxix, 298).
 Facsimile.
 Intrn.: deals mainly with F, not Africa.
 Maps: 1 new.
- YARAK, Larry**
 1977 "The Dutch-Elmina peace initiative of 1754-1758", *Asantesem*
 7: 26-31.
 Transn. of a Dutch report by 2 Elmina townsmen, Djemoe and
 Koffiandor, 1758.
 Intrn.
- 1978 "A Dutch account of the Asante-Fante war of 1806-7",
Asantesem 8: 44-9.
 Transn. of an account by Governor-General Peter Linthorst,
 Elmina 1807.
 Intrn.
- YLVISAKER, Marguerite**: see BENNETT & YLVISAKER 1971.
- YOUNG, Roland**, ed.
 1962 *Through Masailand with Joseph Thomson* (Evanston. Pp. ?).
 Substantially abridged ed. of T's *Through Masai Land* (1885),
 referring to 1883-4. Omissions not shown. Cf. ROTBERG 1968b.
 Intrn. (brief).
 Ann. (sparse).
 Maps: 1 new.
 Apps.: *dramatis personae* (identifies 32 Europeans
 and Africans; glossary (Swahili/Masai); gazetteer.
- ZVEREHEMAN, Jürgen**, intr.
 1968 Wilhelm Johann Müller: *Die afrikanische auf der guineischen*
Gold-Cust gelegene Landschafft Fetu (Graz. Pp. xxxvi, 318).
 Facsimile of Müller's book on the Gold Coast (1st ed. =
 1673).
 Intrn. (not entirely accurate).
 Bibl. (poor).

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

AKINJOGBIN, I.A[deagbo]

- 1966 "Archibald Dalziel: Slave trader and historian of Dahomey",
JAH 7: 67-78.
Uses D's correspondence to show his close involvement in the
slave trade. Cf. RAWLEY 1984; WALDMAN 1965.

AMISSAH, J[oseph] B.

- 1968 "Introducing *Descriptions and Historical Account of the
Golden Kingdom* by Pieter de Marees", THSG 9: 121-7.
Describes the background to the publication of M's
*Beschryvinge ende historische verhael vant Gout Koninckrijck
van Gunea* (1602), linking it with other 17th c. works on the
Gold Coast. One statement by A is corrected in: P.E.H.Hair,
"Early Gold Coast vocabularies", THSG 11 (1970), 123.

ARNOTT, D.W.

- 1965 "Fula dialects in the *Polyglotta Africana*", SLLR 4: 109-21.
See introduction, n. 32.

BASCOM, William

- 1976 "John Clarke's unidentified Nago dialect", AL 2: 14-18.
Suggests that one of the "Nago" wordlists in C's *Specimens
of Dialects* (1848) is Yoruba. Cf. List A: ARDENER 1972.

BIRMINGHAM, David

- 1966 "A note on the Kingdom of Fetu", GNQ 9: 30-35.
Summarises Wilhelm J. Müller, *Die afrikanische auf der Gold
Cust gelegene Landschafft Fetu* (1673). Cf. List A: JONES
1983; ZVERNEMANN 1968.
1970 "The *Regimento da Mina*", THSG 11: 1-7.
Summarises a handbook of the Portuguese crown (1529) on the
organisation of the West African trade.

BOADI, L[awrence] A.

- 1985 "Busumur and the Akan language in Koelle's *Polyglotta
Africana*", *Afrika und übersee* (Hamburg) 67/2: 199-217.
See introduction, n. 32; cf. STEWART 1966.

BONTINCK, François

- 1968 "Une lecture critique de Stanley", *études Congolaises* XI,
1: 38-55.
Compares H.M.Stanley's *Through the Dark Continent* (1878)
with his *Exploration Diaries* (List A: STANLEY & NEAME 1961).
1974 "Brèves remarques relatives au 'Catálogo dos Governadores do
do Reino de Angola'", *Stvdia* 39: 69-78.
Discusses the authorship and different versions of parts of
an anonymous document on Portuguese governors of Angola
(first publ. in 1826).

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

- 1976 "Remarques marginales à Vansina, 'The Dictionary and the Historian'", *HA* 3: 155-6.
Critically examines the value of a Latin-Spanish-kiKongo dictionary ('Vocabularium Latinum, Hispanicum et Congense') copied by Georges de (=Joris van) Geel, 1652 (publ. in 1928), as a source. Cf. BONTINCK 1980; VANSINA 1974.
 - 1977c "Derrota de Benguela para o sertão: critique d'authenticité", *Bulletin des Séances, Académie Royale des Sciences d'Outre-Mer* (Brussels) 23: 279-300.
Critical analysis of an anonymous, undated (19th c.) Portuguese source, publ. 1940. Suggests it was written by Alexandre da Silva Teixeira, 1803, in Benguela.
 - 1980 "Le *Vocabularium Latinum, Hispanicum et Congense*. Nouvelles notes marginales", *Annales Aequatoria* I, Vol. 2: 529-36.
Suggests that the 17th c. dictionary (see BONTINCK 1976) was partly derived from a Latin-Spanish dictionary of 1581.
- BOXER, Charles R.**
- 1960c "A 'Historia da Cadornega' no Museu Britânico", *Boletim Cultural*, Museu de Angola, Luanda, 1: 73-80.
Describes a ms. version of Cadornega's *História Geral das Guerras Angolanas*, showing how it differs from the text of 1681 (publ. 1940-42).
- BRADLOW, Frank R.**
- 1973a "The variants of the 1857 edition of Livingstone's *Missionary Travels and Researches in South Africa*", in: B.W.Lloyd, ed., *Livingstone 1873-1973* (Cape Town), 6-19.
Compares 8 variants of the 1857 ed. and mentions 3 more. In *QBSAL* 28 (1973) 29-30 B corrects an error in this article.
 - 1973b "Some of the variants of *The Life and Explorations of David Livingstone LL.D.*", *QBSAL* 28: 11-24.
Compares variants of this book (1874).
 - 1978 "Robert White, Thomas Baines and *The Gold Regions of South Eastern Africa*", *AN&N* 23, 4: 131-47.
Discusses B's book (1877) and the story of its publication.
- BRANCO, Fernando Castelo(-)**
- 1972 "O valor historiográfico da obra de Cunha Matos sobre S.Tomé", *Stvdia* 35: 45-52.
Discusses the value of Raimundo José da Cunha Matos, *Chorographia Historica das Ilhas de S.Tome e Principe, Anno Bom e Fernando Pó* (1842).
- BRIDGES, Roy C.**
- 1968b "A manuscript Kinika vocabulary and a letter of J.L.Krapf", *Bulletin of the Society for African Church History* 2, 4: 293-8.
Discusses an English-German-Kinika [= Mijikenda] wordlist prepared by K, 1861.
 - 1976 "W.D.Cooley, the RGS and African geography in the 19th century", *Geographical Journal* 142: 27-47, 274-286.
Discusses the involvement of an armchair geographer, William C, in controversies over E.African geography, 1830s-60s.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

- 1977/78 "The documentation of David Livingstone: some new materials", *Hakluyt Society Report* (Cambridge), 1-8.
Discusses 6 of L's notebooks (1850s, late 1860s).
- BURKE, E.E.**
1978 "Hunters and explorers in the 19th Century", *Rhodesiana* 39: 30-40.
Discusses mid-19th c. travellers who wrote about what is now Zimbabwe.
- CASTELLI, Enrico**
1983 "Le spedizioni egiziane alle sorgenti del Nilo Bianco 1839-1842. I giornali di viaggio di d'Arnaud", *Africa* (Rome) 38: 264-76.
Discusses 3 journals of J.P.d'Arnaud on exploration of the White Nile.
- CHILDS, Gladwyn M.**
1960 "The peoples of Angola in the seventeenth century according to Cadornega", *JAH* 1: 271-8.
Summarises A. de Oliveira de Cadornega, *História Geral das Guerras Angolanas* (1680-81, publ. 1940-41) and tries to identify some ethnonyms.
- CHOJNACKI, Stanislaw**
1964 "Dr. Zagiell's 'journey' to Abyssinia. A piece of Polish pseudo-ethiopica", *Journal of Ethiopian Studies* II, 1: 25-32.
Discusses a fictitious account of travels in Abyssinia, written in the mid-1870s by I.Zagiell and publ. in 1884.
- DAGET, Serge**
1975 "An exceptional document: legitimate trade of the ship *Africain* on the west coast of Africa in 1827", *Journal of African Studies* 2: 177-200.
Describes, summarises and discusses the trade register of a French ship, quoting extracts in transn.
- 1982a "Entre Libéria et Gabon en 1827: l'expédition, peut-être légitime, du brick nantais *l'Africain*", *Enquêtes et Documents* (Nantes) 7: 65-92.
A considerably revised and extended French version of DAGET 1975.
- 1982b "À Vieux-Calabar, en 1825: l'expédition du Charles (ou de *l'Eugène*) comme élément du modèle de la traite négrière illégale", in *Études africaines offertes à Henri Brunschwig* (Paris), 116-33.
Analyses in detail the papers of a slave ship captured at Old Calabar.
- DALBY, David**
1965 "Mel languages in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 4: 129-35 & 5: 139-51.
See introduction, n. 32.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

DALBY, David & HAIR, P.E.H.

- 1968 "A further note on the Mina vocabulary of 1479-80", *JWAL* 5: 129-31.
Sequel to HAIR 1966a, using de la Fosse's ms.

DANTZIG, Albert van

- 1974 "Willem Bosman's *New and Accurate Description of the Coast of Guinea*: How accurate is it?" *HA* 1: 101-8.
Shows how widely the much-used English transn. of 1705 differs from the Dutch, *Nauwkeurige beschryving van de Guinese Goud-, Tand- en Slave-kust* (1704, 2nd ed. 1709).
- *1975-84 "English Bosman and Dutch Bosman: A comparison of texts", *HA* 2-*HA* 11.
Series of articles listing the main discrepancies, incorrect translations and omissions in the 1705 English transn. of Bosman's book (see DANTZIG 1974).
Ann.: additional historical information.
- 1984 "Some late seventeenth-century British views on the Slave Coast", in: François de Medeiros, ed., *Peuples du Golfe du Bénin. Aja-Ewe (Colloque de Cotonou)* (Paris), 71-85.
Discusses references to the Slave Coast in Rawlinson mss. C.745-747 ("Correspondence from outforts to Cape Coast Castle, 1681-1699"). Cf. List A: DANTZIG 1976.

DELORD, J.

- 1968 "Le Kaure de la *Polyglotta Africana* et le Kabrè d'aujourd'hui", *ALR* 7: 114-39.
See introduction, n. 32.

DONEUX, J.L.

- 1969 "Le Gio dans la *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 8: 263-71.
See introduction, n. 32.

DUCHÂTEAU, Armand

- 1974 "André Álvares de Almada und André Dornelas, zwei portugiesische Quellen über Westafrika aus dem 16. Jahrhundert", *WEB*, Beiheft 3: 71-88.
Discusses the composition and contents of A's *Tradado Breve* and D's [=Donelha's] ms. (see MOTA 1977).

FAGE, J[ohn] D.

- 1967b "On the reproduction and editing of classics of African history", *JAH* 8: 157-61.
Critical review of Ward's editing of Bowdich and Dupuis (List A: WARD 1966a,b), because W's ann. is mainly on diplomatic history.
- 1980 "A commentary on Duarte Pacheco Pereira's account of the Lower Guinea Coastlands in his *Esmeraldo de Situ Orbis* and on some other early accounts", *HA* 7: 47-79.
Compares PP's description of West Africa (c. 1505-8, first publ. 1892) with other 15th-16th c. sources; corrects and/or supplements the ann. in editions of the *Esmeraldo* by Kimble (1937) and Mauny (1956).

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

FEINBERG, H[arvey] M.

- 1979 "An eighteenth-century case of plagiarism: William Smith's *A New Voyage to Guinea*", *HA* 6: 45-50.
Accuses S (1744) of plagiarism from Bosman (1704, English 1705). Cf. JONES 1980.

FFOLLIOTT, Pamela

- 1964 "Who was the author of *Scenes and Occurrences in Albany and Cafferland*?" *AN&N* 16, 3: 129-34.
Suggests that this book on South Africa (1827) was written jointly by Thomas Philipps and a Mr. Rutherford.

FISHER, Humphrey

- 1978 "Leo Africanus and the Songhay conquest of Hausaland", *IJAHS* 11: 86-112.
Discusses references to a conquest of Hausaland by the askiya of Songhay in L's account (publd. 1550, based on an Arabic ms. or notes, early 16th c.).

FODOR, István

- 1975 *Pallas und andere afrikanische Vokabularien vor dem 19. Jahrhundert. Ein Beitrag zur Forschungsgeschichte* (Hamburg. Pp. ix, 294).
Discusses African linguistic material in Peter S. Pallas, *Linguarum totius orbis vocabularia comparativa*, 1 (1787-9): words from 30 languages, mostly drawn from the books of Barbot, Oldendorp and Sparrman. Compares the data given by these 4 and by more recent studies. Not fully reliable.
- 1977a "The use of L.Magyar's records (1859) for the history of Umbundu", *Studies in African Linguistics*, Supplement 7: 63-71.
Discusses the linguistic material collected in Angola by the Hungarian explorer László/Ladislás Magyar, 1848-57. See List A: FODOR 1983.
- 1977b "Zur Geschichte des Gã (Accran): Protten (1764) und Oldendorp (1777)", in: W.J.G.Möhlrig, F.Rottland & B.Heine, eds., *Zur Sprachgeschichte und Ethnohistorie in Afrika* (Berlin), 47-56.
Evaluates from a linguistic point of view the lexical material in two 18th c. sources (Danish, German) for Gã.
- 1980 "H.E.Hale and his African vocabularies (1846)", *Sprache und Geschichte in Afrika* 2: 127-71.
Discusses African linguistic material (collected in Rio de Janeiro) in Horatio Hale, *United States Exploring Expedition* (1846).

FORBES, Vernon S.

- 1978 "Editing Sparrman", *QBSAL* 32: 69-75.
Reflects on his approach to editing the transn. of S's book (see List A: FORBES 1975/77).

FRYE, J[ohn]

- #1968 "The *South African Advertiser* and the Eastern Frontier, 1834-1847. An examination of the ways in which and the sources from which it reported frontier conflicts", M.A. thesis, Rhodes University.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

GARCIA, António

- 1969 "Camões em Moçambique 1567-1569", *Monumenta* 5: 29-31.
 1971 "Luís de Camões e Gonçalo da Silveira. Grandes na vida e grandes na amizade", *Monumenta* 7: 81-4.
 Both articles discuss C's stay in Mozambique, quoting extracts from his poetry. Cf. List A: GONÇALVES 1969.

GREEN, Margaret M.

- 1967 "Igbo dialects in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 6: 111-19.
 See introduction, n. 32.

GREENBERG, Joseph H.

- 1966 "*Polyglotta* evidence for consonant mutation in the Mandyak languages", *SLLR* 5: 106-10.
 See introduction, n. 32.

GUTHRIE, Malcolm

- 1964 "Bantu languages in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 3: 59-64.
 See introduction, n. 32.

HAIR, Paul E.H.

- 1962 "An account of the Liberian hinterland c. 1780", *Sierra Leone Studies*, N.S. 16: 218-26.
 Summarises and discusses an article by Governor Thomas Ludlam in the *Sierra Leone Gazette*, 1808, on a journey inland from Cape Mount made by an Englishman, Harrison.
 1963b "The languages of Western Africa c. 1770: A note and a query", *Bulletin of the Society for African Church History* 1: 17-20.
 Discusses material collected among slaves in the West Indies, publ. in C.G.A.Oldendorp, *Geschichte der Mission der Evangelischen Brüder auf den Caraibischen Inseln S.Thomas, S.Croix und S.Jan (1777)*.
 1964 "An early 17th century vocabulary of Vai", *African Studies* 23 (3-4): 129-39.
 Identifies most of the vocabulary in the "Kquoja account" of Olfert Dapper, *Naukeurige beschrijvinge der afrikaensche gewesten* (1668).
 1966a "A note on de la Fosse's 'Mina' vocabulary of 1479-80", *JWAL* 3: 55-7.
 Identifies some vocabulary in the Gold Coast section of Eustache d'F's account (first publ. in the *Revue Hispanique*, 1897).
 1966b "An introduction to John Clarke's *Specimens of Dialects...* 1848/9", *SLLR* 5: 72-82.
 Discusses linguistic material on Upper Guinea in C's book (based on interviews with slaves at Fernando Po). Cf. List A: ARDENER 1972.
 1969b "The brothers Tutschek and their Sudanese informants", *SNR* 50: 53-62.
 Discusses the linguistic work of Karl and Lorenz Tutschek in the Sudan in the 1840s and their publications.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

- 1969c "The text of Valentim Fernandes' account of Upper Guinea", *BIFAN* 31: 1035-8.
Critically compares the 1940 printed text with F's ms.
- 1969d "The earliest vocabularies of Cameroons Bantu", *African Studies* 28: 49-54.
Identifies items of vocabulary in Arnout Leers, *Pertinente beschryvinge van Africa* (1665) and Olfert Dapper, *Naukeurige beschrijvinge der afrikaensche gewesten* (1668).
- 1974c "Guinea", in: D.B.Quinn, ed., *The Hakluyt Handbook*, Vol. 1: 197-208.
Discusses Richard H's sources for his accounts of voyages to West Africa in *The Principall Navigations, Voiages and Discoveries of the English Nation* (1589, 1598) and his handling of them.
- 1977 "Short note on the *Polyglotta Africana*: A few more words in 'Eregba'", *AL* 3: 158-9.
See introduction, n. 32.
- 1981b "The earliest extant word list of Swahili, 1613", *African Studies* 40: 151-3.
Analyses a word-list collected in the Comoro Islands by William [sic: = Walter] Payton and publ. in Samuel Purchas, *Purchas his Pilgrimes* (1625).
- 1986 "Material on Africa (other than the Mediterranean and Red Sea lands) and on the Atlantic islands, in the publications of Samuel Purchas 1613-1625", *HA* 13: 117-59.
Discusses P's handling of his sources in his *Pilgrimage* (1613 et seq.) and *Pilgrimes* (1625).

HAIR, P.B.H. & DALBY, David

- 1967 "A West African word of 1456", *JWAL* 4: 13-14.
Discusses a word in Diogo Gomes, *De Prima Inventione Guineae* (first publ. 1940).
See DALBY & HAIR 1964.

HARINGTON, A.L.

- 1973 "The *Graham's Town Journal* and the Great Trek, 1834-1843", *Argiefjaarboek vir Suid-Afrikaanse Geskiedenis* (Johannesburg) 32, II: 1-117D (originally an M.A. at University of S.Africa).
Discusses how the editor, Robert Godlonton, used the newspaper to influence opinion on the trek.
Index: general.
Bibl.

HEINTZE, Beatrix

- 1981 "Written sources and African history: A plea for the primary source. The Angolan manuscript collection of Fernão de Sousa", *HA* 9: 77-103.
Describes the ms. collection of FdS (Governor of Angola, 1624-30) and compares its contents with 3 secondary sources (Cadornega, Cavazzi, *Catálogo dos Governadores*), using a statistical exercise.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

HIRSCHBERG, Walter

- 1964 "Der Abfallhügel von Dawu (Akuapin, Ghana) und der Reise-Bericht Pieter de Marees (1605)", in: *Festschrift für Ad.E.Jensen* (2 vols., Munich), I: 193-8.
Discusses Thurstan Shaw's excavations at Dawu in the light of extracts from PdM (German précis, 1605) and other 17th c. sources.
- 1970 "Von der Fetuischen Abgötterey / Un- und Aberglauben", *Mitteilungen der Anthropologischen Gesellschaft in Wien* 100: 251-7.
"Source criticism" of Wilhelm J. Müller, *Die afrikanische auf der guineischen Gold Cust gelegene Landschaft Fetu* (1673) through comparison with a few other sources (de Barros, de Marees, Rattray); fails to see that Müller used de Marees.
Cf. List A: JONES 1983; ZWERNEMANN 1968.

INNES, Gordon

- 1967 "Mende in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 6: 120-27.
See introduction, n. 32.

IZARN, Reginald Roger

- 1969 "Les documents Arnaud d'Abbadie", *Proceedings of the 3rd International Conference of Ethiopian Studies* (Addis Ababa) 155-68.
Discusses d'A's *Douze ans dans la Haute Ethiopie* (1868) and his mss.

JOHNSON, Marion

- 1974 "News from nowhere: Duncan and 'Adofoodia'", *HA* 1: 55-66.
Suggests that John Duncan's description of a journey to "Adofoodia", 1845, in his *Travels in Western Africa in 1845 and 1846* (1847) was invented to raise funds.

JONES, Adam

- 1980 "William Smith the Plagiarist: A rejoinder", *HA* 7: 327-8.
Reply to FEINBERG 1979, defending Smith.
- 1981 "Théophile Conneau at Galinhas and New Sestos, 1836-1841: A comparison of the sources", *HA* 8: 89-105.
Compares a section in Brantz Mayer, *Captain Canot; or, Twenty Years of an African Slaver* (1854) with the autobiographical ms. of Conneau/Canot on which it was based (publ. 1976) and other sources, including newspapers and admiralty records.
Cf. MOUSER 1979b.

JONES, E.M.

- 1968 "Further notes on the *Chronicle of Jeremiah Goldswain*", *AN&N* 18, 4: 183-94.
Provides detailed ann. for a work publ. in 1946-9 (referring to early 19th c. South Africa).

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

- KELLY, John**
1968 "Urhobo in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 7: 107-13.
See introduction, n. 32.
- KÖHLER, Oswin**
1964 "Gur languages in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 3: 65-73.
See introduction, n. 32.
- KROPP, Mary Esther**
1966 "The Adampe and Anfue dialects of Ewe in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 5: 116-21.
See introduction, n. 32.
- LACROIX, P.F.**
1967 "Le vocabulaire 'Kandin' dans la *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 6: 153-8.
See introduction, n. 32.
- LAVER, John**
1969 "Etsako in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 8: 257-62.
See introduction, n. 32.
- LAW, Robin**
1982 "Jean Barbot as a source for the Slave Coast of West Africa", *HA* 9: 155-73.
Critically analyses Slave Coast material in B's 1688 ms. and his *A Description of the Coasts of North and South-Guinea* (1732), showing that much - but not all - was derivative.
- LEVERTON, B.J.**
1964 "The papers of Henry Francis Fynn", *Historia* 9: 29-33.
Tells the history of F's papers on Natal (1820s-1861).
- LOCKHART, Donald M.**
1969 "The Palmella manuscript of Dom João de Castro's *Roteiro de Goa a Suez*", *Proceedings of the 3rd International Conference of Ethiopian Studies* (Addis Ababa) 117-21.
Describes and discusses a Portuguese ms. of a rutter (1540s); suggests the ms. was drawn up in 1637.
- MARISSAL, Jacques**
1981 "L'africain de l'est d'après Burton", in: *Le sol, la parole, et l'écrit (Mélanges en hommage à Raymond Mauny)* (Paris), 479-93.
Discusses Richard B's writings on E. Africa, e.g. his tendency to classify Africans by race and tribe.
- MCCASKIE, [Thomas] C.**
1984 "Drake's fake. A curiosity concerning a spurious visit to Asante in 1839", *HA* 11: 223-36.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

Discusses *Revelations of a Slave Smuggler: Being the Autobiography of Captain Richard Drake...* (1860); shows D's account of a visit to Kumase was plagiarised from Thomas B. Freeman, *Journal of Various Visits to the Kingdom of Ashanti, Aku, and Dahomi in Western Africa* (1844).

MEYER, Lysle E.

1982

"T.J.Bowen and Central Africa: A 19th-c. missionary delusion", *IJAHS* 15: 247-60.

Discusses B's *Central Africa: Adventures and Missionary Labors in...the Interior of Africa from 1849 to 1856* (1857), linking it with contemporary documents (Liberia, Nigeria). Cf. List A: AYANDELE 1968.

MILLER, Joseph C.

1973

"A note on Jean-Baptiste Douville", *Cahiers d'études Africaines* XIII, 49: 150-53.

Challenges the claim in STAMM 1970 that D's account of 2 journeys into the interior of West Central Africa (1828-30) in his book *Voyage au Congo* (1832) was largely genuine. Uses Portuguese archival sources.

1984

"Capitalism and trading: the financial and commercial organization of the Angolan slave trade, according to the accounts of Antonio Coelho Guerreiro (1684-1692)", *IJAHS* 17: 1-56.

Discusses the value of CG's journal (publd. 1956).

Maps: 2 new.

NOTA, Alvelino Teixeira da

1973

"Cartografia antiga de Sofala", *Monumenta* 9: 5-18.

Describes and discusses 38 maps of the port of Sofala.

NOUSER, Bruce L.

1979b

"Théophilus Conneau: The saga of a tale", *HA* 6: 97-107.

Compares Brantz Mayer, *Captain Canot; or, Twenty Years of an African Slaver* (1854) with the original ms. of Canot/Conneau (publd. 1854). Cf. JONES 1981.

NACHTIGAL, Gustav

1977

Gedenkschrift Gustav Nachtigal 1874-1974 (Bremen. Pp. vii, 249).

Collective volume: several contributions (Caprile, Fisher, Henze, Herzog, Jungraithmayr, Wickens) deal with N's book, *Sahāra und Sūdān* (1879-89).

NARDIN, Jean-Claude

1985

"Que savons-nous du Chevalier Des Marchais?" *CITN* III (Pp. 17).

Discusses DM's ms. journals (1704, 1724-6) of his voyages along the West African coast.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

NARDIN, Jean-Claude & SPIRIK, Hermann

- 1970 "Un nouveau document pour l'étude des populations lagunaires de la Côte d'Ivoire du début du XVIII^e siècle: Le voyage du [=de] Jean Godot à Assinie (1701)", *Proceedings of the 8th International Congress of Anthropological & Ethnological Sciences 1968* (3 vols., Tokyo) III: 78-81.
Summarises and discusses a ms. of 1704 referring mainly to Assinie (Ivory Coast).

NASH, M.D.

- 1978 "A question of authorship: Charles Bailie or Guybone Atherstone?" *AN&N* 23, 2: 59-60.
Suggests that a letter of 1835 on the "Kaffir War", attributed to B, was more probably by A.
- 1981 "J.C.Chase's forgotten journal", *AN&N* 24, 6: 200-1.
Discusses the (thwarted?) publication of John C. Chase, *Memoranda Made on Two Journeys into the Sichuana Territory during the Years 1825 and 1826*.

PETRAČEK, Karel

- 1962 "Der angebliche Aufenthalt von J.J.Římař in Nordost-Afrika und der Verfasser von *Descriptio Aethiopiae*", *Annals of the Náprstek Museum* (Prague) 1: 91-9.
Shows that R's "Descriptio Aethiopiae" (written in or after 1754) was a précis of V.R.Prutký's *Itinerarium* (1753), not a report based on a visit by R to Ethiopia. (Both = Bohemian Franciscans.)

PISTONI, Giuseppe

- 1969 "I manoscritti 'Araldi' di Padre Giovanni Antonio Cavazzi da Montecuccolo", *Atti e Memorie della Accademia Nazionale di Scienze, Lettere e Arti di Modena*, Serie VI, Vol. 11: 152-65.
Discusses ms. drafts of C's *Istorica Descrizione* (1687). See idem, *Fra Gio Antonio Cavazzi da Montecuccolo: Documenti inediti* (Modena 1972).

PRIOUL, Christian

- 1985 "Géographie à la côte d'Angole, vers 1786", *CITN* II No. 1.
Discusses L.Degrandpré, *Voyage à la côte occidentale d'Afrique, fait dans les années 1786 et 1787* (1801).

PROST, A.

- 1966 "La langue Gurma dans la *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 5: 134-8.
See introduction, n. 32.
- 1969 "La langue de Tumbuktu dans la *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 8: 272-8.
See introduction, n. 32.

RAWLEY, James A.

- 1984 "Further light on Archibald Dalzel", *IJAHS* 17: 317-23.
Shows that D (author of *The History of Dahomy, an Inland Kingdom of Africa*, 1793) was even more involved in the slave trade than AKINJOGBIN 1966 and WALDMAN 1965 suggest.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

- ROBINSON, Antony M. Lewin, ed., assisted by P.W.N.SELICKS**
 #1973b *François le Vaillant, Traveller in South Africa and his Collection of 165 Watercolour Paintings 1781-1784* (2 vols., Cape Town. Pp. xx, 172).
 Has chapters by several scholars on V's contribution to knowledge of South Africa, including his *Voyage dans l'intérieur de l'Afrique* (1790).
- ROWLANDS, E.C.**
 1965 "Yoruba dialects in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 4: 103-8.
 See introduction, n. 32.
- SAINT-MARTIN, Yves]**
 1964 "Note sur deux éditions des *Voyages du sieur Lemaire aux Iles Canaries, Senegal et Gambie* (Paris 1695)", *BIFAN* 26: 709-13.
 Discusses 2 editions of J.J.Le Maire's book (same publisher and year, but slight differences); suggests that 1 was a pirated ed., printed in the Netherlands.
 1966 *Une source de l'histoire coloniale du Sénégal. Les Rapports de Situation Politique (1874-1891)* (Dakar. Pp. 168).
 Describes and discusses in detail 6 letterbooks in the Dakar archive, containing reports of Senegal governors on the "political situation in Senegal and its dependencies".
 Maps: 6 new.
 Bibl.
- SAPIR, J. David**
 1970/71 "Diola in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 9: 186-203.
 See introduction, n. 32.
- SCHOLLER, Heinrich**
 1978 "Letters exchanged between Ethiopian and German emperors", *Proceedings of the 5th International Conference on Ethiopian Studies* (Chicago) 495-212-
 Describes and discusses the correspondence, 1872-1909.
- SCHUH, Russell G.**
 1975a "Bóde, Ngó:djin and Dó:ai in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *AL* 1: 290-99.
 See introduction, n. 32.
 1975b "Kándin in the *Polyglotta Africana*: Two languages in one", *AL* 1: 300-305.
 See introduction, n. 32.
- SCHUTTE, P.J.**
 1968 "Die Griekwastadse Spelboek van 1819", *AN&N* 18: 119-22 & 161-4.
 Discusses the publication of a Griqua spelling book by the LMS, 1819.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

SCHÜZ, Ernst

1967

"Baron von Ludwig in Kapstadt und seine Briefe an Ferdinand Krauß in Port Natal 1838", *Jahreshefte des Vereins für vaterländische Naturkunde in Württemberg* (Stuttgart) 122: 47-62.

Summarises and reproduces extracts (trpn.) from letters of Baron Carl Ferdinand L (Cape Town) to FK concerning the latter's botanical/zoological research in Natal, 1838-9.

SELICKS, P.W.M.: see ROBINSON 1973b

SHEPPERSON, George

1983

"Winwood Reade and Africa", in Roy Bridges, ed., *An African Miscellany for John Hargreaves* (Aberdeen), 83-6.

Discusses personal/psychological factors which influenced R's *The Martyrdom of Man* and books on W.Africa (1872-4).

SHINIZU, Kiyoshi

1970/71,

"Jukunoid languages in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 9: 204-26; *AL* 1: 260-89.

1975

See introduction, n. 32.

SPENCER, John

1966

"S.W.Koelle and the problem of notation for African languages, 1847-1855", *ALR* 5: 83-105.

Discusses the Church Missionary Society's pamphlet, *Rules for Reducing Unwritten Languages to Alphabetical Writing in Roman Characters. With Reference Especially to...Africa* (1848) and K's contribution to orthography and notation, notably in his *Polyglotta Africana* (1854). See introduction, n. 32.

SPIRIK, Hermann: see NARDIN & SPIRIK 1970.

SPOHR, Otto H.

1963

"The first Hottentot vocabulary, 1663", *QBSAL* 18: 27-33.

Tells the story of the discovery and publication of a Koi-Khoi wordlist written by Georgius Fredericus Wre(e)de(n), probably not publ. till 1916.

STANN, Anne

1970

"Jean-Baptiste Douville: Voyage au Congo (1827-30)", *Cahiers d'études Africaines* X, 37: 5-39.

Suggests that much of D's account of his journey into the interior of West Central Africa (*Voyage au Congo*, 1832) is verifiable and original. Cf. MILLER (J) 1973.

STEWART, John M.

1966

"Asante Twi in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 5: 111-15.

See introduction, n. 32.

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

STRITZL, Angelika

- 1970 "Einige ethnographische Nachrichten von Le Maire's Reise zum Senegal in ethnohistorischer Sicht", *WEB* 1: 63-92.
Summarises *Voyages du sieur [J.J.] Lemaire aux Iles Canaries, Senegal et Gambie* (1695) and describes the background to its composition, using few other sources.

TARDIEU, Jean-Pierre

- 1984 "Du bon usage de la monstruosité: la vision de l'Afrique chez Alonso de Sandoval (1627)", *Bulletin hispanique* (Bordeaux) 86: 164-78.
Shows how S's *De Instaurande Aethiopum salute* (1627) combined accurate (or plausible) information on Africa with mythical elements, in order to support the case for giving African slaves a religious education.

TEDESCHI, Salvatore

- 1981 "L'Abissinia nel Libro di Marco Polo", *Africa* (Rome) 36: 361-89.
Analyses the Abyssinia section in MP's book (late 13th c.).
Maps: 1 new.

THILMANS, Guy & MORAES, Nize Isabel de

- 1976 "Villault de Bellefond sur la côte occidentale d'Afrique. Les deux premières campagnes de l'Europe (1666-1671)", *BIFAN* 38: 257-99.
Discusses V's *Relation des costes d'Afrique appelés Guinée* (1669) in the light of other sources (mainly unpubld.) relating to his voyages.
- 1981 "Un visiteur de la côte ouest-africaine au xvii^e siècle: Le capitaine de vaisseau d'Estivalle", in: *Le sol, la parole et l'écrit (Mélanges en hommage à Raymond Mauny)* (Paris) 457-69.
Information of Henri d'Estivalle, naval officer and author of a report on West Africa written in 1672 (publd. 1951).

THORNTON, John K.

- 1979 "New light on Cavazzi's 17th-century description of Kongo", *HA* 6: 253-64.
Uses a ms. version of C's *Istorica Descrizione de'tre Regni Congo, Matamba et Angola* (1687) to show how he collected his material.

TOMANOVSKAYA, O.C.

- 1982 "Zametki ob istorii sozdaniya pervuikh evropeiskikh istochnikov po nizhnei Gvinee (konets XVI - nachalo XVII v.)", *Afrikanskii Etnograficheskii Sbornik* 13: 196-233.
Discusses the accounts of Lower Guinea by F.Pigafetta/D.Lopes and A.Battell (late 16th - early 17th c.).

LIST B: ANALYTICAL WORK ON INDIVIDUAL AUTHORS

VALSECCHI, Pierluigi

1979

"Lettere dalla Costa d'Oro e dalla Costa degli Schiavi: osservazioni e note sull'opera inedita di Brodie Cruickshank", Tesi di Laurea, Facoltà di Lettere e Filosofia, Università degli studi di Pisa.

Study of C's unpubld. ms. on the Gold and Slave Coasts.

VAN DANTZIG: see DANTZIG.

VANSINA, Jan

1974

"The dictionary and the historian", *HA* 1: 155-6.

Uses a 17th c. Latin-Spanish-kiKongo dictionary (as publ. by J. van Wing & C. Penders, 1928) to illustrate the value of old dictionaries of African languages as historical sources. Cf. BONTINCK 1969 and 1980.

WALDMAN, Loren K.

1965

"An unnoticed aspect of Archibald Dalziel's *The History of Dahomey* [=Dahomy]", *JAH* 6: 185-92.

Shows that D's book (1793) was "a polemic written in order to counter the charges of the British anti-slave trade movement". Cf. AKINJOGBIN 1965; RAWLEY 1984.

WESSELY, Klaus

1972

"Bemerkungen zur Ethnohistorie Südafrikas am Beispiel einer Quellenkritik von Joh. Chr. Hoffmann: *Oost-Indianische Voyage* 1680", *WEB* 4: 45-76.

Compares the testimony of H on the inhabitants of South Africa with that of Dapper (1668), Springer (1508-9) and Schreyer (1681).

WILLIAMSON, Kay

1966

"Ijo dialects in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 5: 122-33.

See introduction, n. 32.

WINSTON, F.D.D.

1964

"Nigerian Cross River River languages in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *SLLR* 3: 74-82 & 4: 122-7.

See introduction, n. 32.

ZVERIEMANN, Jürgen

1966

"Zwei Quellen des 17. Jahrhunderts über die Vai in Liberia: Samuel Brun und Olfert Dapper", in: J. Lukas, ed., *Neue afrikanistische Studien* (Hamburg) 293-319.

Compares the descriptions of Cape Mount in B, *Schiffarten in etliche neue Länder und Insulen* (1624) and D, *Umbständliche und eigentliche Beschreibung von Africa* (1670: does not use the Dutch of 1668) with a few more recent works (Snoek, Koelle, Büttikofer, Johnston, Ronnefeldt).

1967

"Kasem dialects in the *Polyglotta Africana*", *ALR* 6: 128-52.

See introduction, n. 32.

LIST C: ANALYTICAL WORK ON GROUPS OF TEXTS

BONTINCK, François

- #1963 "Les premiers travaux linguistiques kikongo des missionnaires Capuchins", *Ngonge Kongo* 15.

FILESI, Teobaldo

- 1977 "Lingue locali nella "Missio Antiqua" (1645-1835)", *L'Uomo* 1, 1: 121-31.
Survey of studies in African languages by Italian Capuchin missionaries in Kongo and Angola.
- 1978 "Contributi dei Cappuccini italiani alla conoscenza dell'antico regno del Congo (Secoli XVII e XVIII)", *Faideuma* 24: 203-24.
Survey of Italian Capuchins' writings on Kongo, 17th-18th c., with good bibl.

FILESI, Teobaldo & VILLAPADIERNA, I. de

- 1978 *La 'Missio Antiqua' dei Cappuccini nel Congo (1645-1835)* (Rome. Pp. 269).
Part 2: detailed survey of publ. and unpubl. writings of Capuchins on the Kongo kingdom.

HAIR, P.E.H.

- 1966 "Collections of vocabularies of Western Africa before the *Polyglotta: A key*", *Journal of African Languages* 5: 208-17.
Systematic survey of 6 collections of vocabularies: Senegal Company Dictionary (1700), Oldendorp (1777), Bowdich (1819), Kilham (1828), Clarke (1848), Koelle (1854).
- 1967b *The Early Study of Nigerian Languages. Essays and Bibliographies* (Cambridge. Pp. xiii, 110).
Review of research (mostly European) on Nigerian languages, 1825-90.
- 1970 "The contribution of early linguistic material to the history of West Africa", in David Dalby, ed., *Language and History in Africa* (London), 50-63.
Discusses pre-1800 European material on West African languages and its value to historians.
- 1980 "Portuguese contacts with the Bantu languages of the Transkei, Natal and Southern Mozambique 1497-1650", *African Studies* 39: 3-46.
Identifies some terms from Bantu languages publ. in Portuguese works, 1550-1650.

HEINTZE, Beatrix

- 1983 "Probleme der Interpretation von Schriftquellen. Die portugiesischen Richtlinien zur Angola-Politik im 17. Jahrhundert als Beispiel", in: R.Voßen & U.Claudi, eds., *Sprache, Geschichte und Kultur in Afrika. Vorträge gehalten auf dem III. Afrikanistentag, Köln, 14./15. Oktober 1982* (Hamburg), 463-80.

LIST C: ANALYTICAL WORK ON GROUPS OF TEXTS

Deals with the problem of stereotypes in written sources, using as illustrations the various sets of instructions issued by the Portuguese crown to governors of Angola in the 17th c.

JONES, Adam

- 1982 "Double Dutch? A survey of 17th-c. German sources for West African history", *HA* 9: 141-53.
Discusses the relation of various German sources to one another and to Dutch sources.
- 1986 "Semper aliquid veteris. Printed sources for the history of the Ivory and Gold Coasts, 1500-1750", *JAH* 27: 215-35.
Systematic study of plagiarism etc. in the European sources for one region, with an annotated bibl.

KREMSEK, Manfred

- 1981 "Das Bild der 'menschenfressenden Niam-Niam' in den Berichten deutscher Forschungsreisender des 19. Jahrhunderts", *WEB* 21: 77-111.
Discusses 19th c. German travellers' negative images of the Azande.

LAV, Robin

- 1973 "Contemporary written sources", in: S.O.Biobaku, ed., *Sources of Yoruba History* (Oxford), 9-24.
Reviews European sources for Yorubaland before 1840 and the problems they raise.

LAWRENCE, Arnold W.

- 1961 "Some source books for West African history", *JAH* 2: 227-34.
Discusses Barbot, Bosman (2 editions), Dapper, Labat and Tilleman in the light of other Gold Coast sources (mainly PRO). A pioneering study, not entirely accurate.

MAURY, Raymond

- 1975-6 "Livres de bord de navires portugais faisant la traite sur les côtes de l'Afrique occidentale au XVI^e siècle", *Provence Historique* (Marseille) 99: 79-85.
Discusses briefly the contents of 13 Portuguese ships' logs kept on slaving voyages to West Africa, 1522-36 (9 of them unpubl.).

MUDIMBE-BOYI, Mb.

- #1975 "Vocabulaire et idéologie dans les écrits des missionnaires capucins aux 17^e et 18^e siècles", *Philologie et Linguistique Romanes* (Lubumbashi), Bulletin 2: 1-60.

SZALAY, Miklós

- 1974 "Das Bild der Khoi im 16. und frühen 17. Jahrhundert", *WEB*, Beiheft 3: 215-29.
Discusses material on the Khoi in early sources (mainly those publ. in [List A:] RAVEN-HART 1967b; also João de Barros 1552).

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

NOTE: "B:" refers to List B, "C:" to List C; "." to the addenda (p. 153); all other items are in List A. Dates given in brackets refer in most cases to the years covered in the text or to the date when a work was first published. They are not to be taken too seriously: the purpose is merely to give a rough picture of the periods dealt with. Where a surname has two or more components (without a hyphen), it is the last part that is given here.

- Abbadie, A d' (1830s-40s): ALLIER 1980, 1983; TUBIANA 1961; B: IZARN 1969
Adanson, M (1749-54): BECKER 1981, 1982a; BECKER & MARTIN 1980;
BECKER, MARTIN & MBODJ 1978
Adee, A (1827): BROOKS 1968
Afonso (1506-43): JADIN & DICORATO 1974
Africanus, L (early 16th c.): SCHUBARTH-ENGELSCHALL 1984. B: FISHER 1978
Afzelius, A (1795-6): KUP 1967
Alberti, L (1807): KOCK 1968
Alfonse, J (1544-59): HAIR 1976
Almada, A A de (1594): HAIR ET AL. 1984; MOTA 1970
al-Siddiq, A (1834-5): CURTIN 1967
Alvares, F (1520s): BECKINGHAM & HUNTINGFORD 1961; GERMA BASAH 1966
Alvares, M (1611): HAIR (ARB) 1981
Anania, G (1573-82): LANGE & BERTHOUD 1972
Anderson, B (1870-74): FISHER 1971
Andrade, B A de (1777): ANDRADE 1970
Andrade, F d' (1582): BOULEGUE 1967a; HAIR (ARB) 1974
Appleyard, J (1840s-50s): FRYE 1971
Arbousset, T (1842): RYCROFT 1984
Arnaud, J (1839-42): B: CASTELLI 1983
Ashmore, M (1647): JENSON 1973
Atherstone, G (1835): B: NASH 1978
Atherton, E (1824): ANONYMOUS 1976
Atkins, J (1722): JOHNSON 1978
Atri, M d' (1690-1700): CUVELIER 1960; TOSO 1984
Ayliff, J (mid-19th c.): HINCHCLIFF 1971
Azevac, M d' (1845): CURTIN 1967; HAIR 1961

Bailie, J (1847): NASH 1979
Baines, T (1842-53): ANONYMOUS 1969; KENNEDY 1961-4; TABLER ET AL. 1982. B:
BRADLOW 1978
Baldwin, W (1852-60): CLENDENNEN 1981
Ballot, V (1884): GANIER 1968
Barber, F (1875-8): MITFORD-BARBERTON 1966; TABLER 1960
Barber, M (1879): ANONYMOUS 1962-3
Barbot, J (1678-88, 1732): DEBIEN ET AL. 1978; HAIR 1974a; HAIR (ARB) 1981.
B: FODOR 1975; HAIR 1981c; LAW 1982. C: LAWRENCE
1961
Barnard, A (1793-1803): ROBINSON 1973a

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Barnard, F (1842-6): SIMPSON 1969
 Barreira, B (1606-8): HAIR (ARB) 1976-8, 1983; THILMANS & MORAES 1972
 Barreto, F (1573): GUERREIRO 1960
 Barrington, C (1737): BOUCHER 1981
 Barros, J de (1552): FREEMAN-GRENVILLE 1962. C: SZALAY 1974
 Barth, H (1849-55): ITALIAANDER 1970, 1980; KIRK-GREENE 1962, 1971; SCHIFFERS 1965, 1977. B: SCHIFFERS 1967
 Battell, A (1590s-1600s): B: TOMANOVSKAYA 1982
 Beaulieu (1619): HAIR (ARB) 1974
 Beecham, J (1841): METCALFE 1968
 Belcher, G (1853): IMMELMAN 1969
 Bell, C (1851): ANONYMOUS 1960
 Bellefond: see Villault
 Bellefonds: see Linant
 Beltrame, G (1859): SANDERSON 1961a
 Berkeley, G (1846-7): CORDEUR & SAUNDERS 1981
 Best, C (1807): RAVEN-HART 1970a
 Beurmann, K von (1860-63): FRANCONIE 1973
 Bilali, S (1844): CURTIN 1967
 Blancard, P (1806): GRAY 1964b
 Bleek, W (1855-6): SPOHR 1965
 Blyden, E (1851-1910): GIVENS 1976; LYNCH 1971, 1978
 Boilat, D (1853): DIOP 1984
 Bologna, C da (1706): FILESI 1971
 Bonnat, M-J (1869-75): JOHNSON 1968, 1971
 Bonnefoy, P (1798): GRAY 1962
 Bonsu, O (1819): KEA 1979a
 Bontemps, J (1566): HAIR 1969a
 Booth, A (1879): BUTTERFIELD 1985b
 Bosman, W (ca. 1688-1702): WILLIS 1967. B: DANTZIG 1974, 1975-84; FEINBERG 1979. C: LAWRENCE 1961.
 Boucard, C (1728-31): CURTIN & BOULAGUE 1974
 Bövingh, J (1712): RAVEN-HART 1970b
 Bowdich, T (1819): WARD 1966a. C: HAIR 1966c
 Bowen, T (1849-56): AYANDELE 1968. B: MEYER 1982
 Bowie, J (1819-20): ROBINSON 1965-6
 Bowker, B (1820s-70s): MITFORD-BARBERTON 1970
 Bowker, H (1835-58): MITFORD-BARBERTON 1970
 Boyce, W (1834-8): MEARS 1971
 Brasseur, J Le (1778): BECKER & MARTIN 1977b
 Brazza, P Savorgnan de (1875-85): BRUNSCHWIG 1969, 1972; COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969; GOMA-FOUTOU 1984
 Brehm, A (1847-52): ARNDT 1981a
 Brigstocke, R (1861): SCOTT 1967
 Broecke, P van den (1606-9): THILMANS & MORAES 1977b
 Brownlee, J (1846): HOLT 1965
 Bruce, J (1768-73): BECKINGHAM 1964
 Brugevin (1787-8): DEBIEN 1982
 Brun, S (1611-20): HAIR (ARB) 1977; HIRSCHBERG 1969; JONES 1983; B: ZWERNEMANN 1966
 Buckeridge, M (1653): JENSON 1973
 Bultmann, F (1837-61): GLASSWELL 1969
 Burchell, W (1822-4): GORDON-BROWN 1967
 Burckhardt, J (1813-14): ARNDT 1981b

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Burrow, J (1834-6): KIRBY 1971
 Burton, R (1850s-80s): COLLINS 1967; MOORHEAD 1961; NEWBURY 1966; WATERFIELD 1966. B: MARISSAL 1981
 Buttner, J (1716): NIENABER & RAVEN-HART 1970
- Cadalvène, E de (1829-36): O'FAHEY 1973
 Cadamosto (1455): HAIR 1971; LEPORACE 1966; SADJI 1980
 Cadornega, A (1681): B: BOXER 1960c; CHILDS 1960
 Caille, N de la (1751-3): RAVEN-HART 1976
 Caillie, R (mid-1820s): BERQUE 1979
 Caltanissetta/Caltanissetta, L da (1690-1701): BONTINCK 1970; RAINERO ca. 1973
 Cameron, V (1877): ANONYMOUS 1981
 Camões, L de (1560s): GONÇALVES 1969. B: GARCIA 1969, 1971
 Campbell, J (1739): PANKHURST 1973
 Canot: see Conneau
 Capellis, H de (1784-5): GAULME 1977
 Cape Town Gazette & African Advertiser (1800-1): ROBINSON 1982
 Capitein, J (1744): TRUTENAU 1977
 Cardoso, M (1624): BONTINCK & SEGOVIA 1972; BRASIO 1969
 Carstensen, E (1842-50): ANONYMOUS [1965]; NØRREGÅRD 1964
 Carvalho, F Pirez de (1635): HAIR (ARB) 1974; THILMANS & MORAES 1970
 Cases, Count de las (19th c.): SPOHR 1970
 Castro, J de (1540s): B: LOCKHART 1969
 Catarina, F de Santa (1744): BOXER 1960b
 Cavazzi, G (1687): LEGUZZANO 1965; SCHENETTI 1978. B: PISTONI 1969; THORNTON 1979
 Cavendish, G (1580s): HAIR (ARB) 1984
 Ceriana, B Rebaudo da (late 17th c.): TOSO 1973
 Chambonneau, L de (1673-7): RITCHIE 1967, 1968. B: BECKER 1972
 Chamisso, A von (1818): ROSENTHAL & DAVE 1982
 Champion, G (1835-9): BOOTH 1967, 1968
 Chapman, J (1849-63): TABLER 1971
 Chase, J (1825-43): ANONYMOUS 1968. B: NASH 1981
 Christaller, J (1879): LANGE 1985
 Churchill, J & M (1850-80): CHILD 1979
 Clarke, J (1848-9): ARDENER 1972. B: BASCOM 1976; HAIR 1966b. C: HAIR 1966c
 Clarke, W (1854-8): ATANDA 1972
 Coelho, F de Lemos (1669, 1684): HAIR 1985; MORAES 1973
 Colenso, J (1854-65): EDGECOMBE 1982
 Conneau/Canot, T (1830s-40s): KATZ 1968; SMYTHE 1976. B: JONES 1981; MOUSER 1979b
 Cooley, W (1830s-60s): WILLIS 1966. B: BRIDGES 1976
 Corella, B da (1654): SALVADORINI 1973
 Corre, A Le (1876-7): DEBIEN 1964
 Cortemünde, J P (1672): VARLEY & VARLEY 1962
 Cosme, F (1770): PINA 1967
 Covilhã, P de (1587): B: SICARD 1970
 Cox, J (1868-9): "WACELET" 1968
 Cox, W (1828-35): BUTTERFIELD 1982
 Craen, H (1610): COOLHAAS 1969
 Croix, P de la (1697): LANGE 1981
 Croonenberghs, C (1879-81): ROBERTS 1979
 Cross, A (1875): TABLER 1966b
 Crowther, S (1841, 1854): AJAYI 1970a, b; CURTIN 1967; WALLS 1965

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Cruickshank, B (1830s-50s): BUSIA 1966. B: VALSECCHI 1979
 Cuffe, P (1811): HARRIS 1962
 Cugoano, O (1787): EDWARDS 1969
 Cumberland, G (1580s): HAIR (ARB) 1984
 Cumming, R Gordon (1850): CASADA 1980
 Cunha, A Álvares da (1754): COUTO 1979

 Daendels, H (1815-17): COLLINS 1964
 Dalzel, A (1793): FAGE 1967a. B: AKINJOGBIN 1966; RAWLEY 1984; WALDMAN 1965
 Dapper, O (1668): ANONYMOUS 1966; HAIR 1974a; ITALIAANDER 1964; THILMANS
 1971. B: HAIR 1964, 1969d; SZALAY 1974; WESSELY
 1972; ZWERNEMANN 1966. C: LAWRENCE 1961
 David, P-F-B (1744): DELCOURT 1974
 Davity, P (1637): HAIR 1974a
 Dawson, J (1872): SANDERS 1978
 Decken, C von der (1859-65): HENZE 1978
 Degrandpré, L (1786-7): B: PRIOUL 1985
 Denham, D et al. (1822-5): BOVILL 1966; JOHNSTON & MUFFETT 1974
 Dennison, H (1820-47): EDGECOMBE 1968
 Depelchin, H (1879-81): ROBERTS 1979
 Destival, Sr: see Estivalle
 Diallo, A S (1734): CURTIN 1967
 Dicomano, R de (1791-5): TOSO 1977
 Dodgshun, A (1877-9): BENNETT 1969
 Dolcedo, P da (1643-7): TOSO 1979
 Donelha/Dornelas, A (1625): MOTA 1977. B: DUCHATEAU 1974
 Donkin, R (1820-21): SCOTT 1970
 Doumet (1769): BECKER & MARTIN 1974
 Douville, J-B (1827-30): B: MILLER 1973; STAMM 1970
 Drake, F (1580s): HAIR (ARB) 1984
 Drake, R (1807-57): JACKSON 1972. B: McCASKIE 1984
 Duncan, J (1845-7): JOHNSON 1974
 Dupuis, J (1824): WARD 1966b
 Durão, A (1607-9): SOUTO 1963

 Rich, H J Zur (1659-69): JONES 1983
 Eliza (1863): SAUNDERS 1980
 Elton, J (1879): LEE 1960
 Emin Pas(c)ha (1876-92): GRAY 1961-8; SCHIFFERS & SIMONS 1983
 Enciso, M F de (1519): HAIR 1976
 Ensor, E (1852-3): ANONYMOUS 1972
 Equiano, O (1789): CURTIN 1967; EDWARDS 1967
 Essex, A (1851-2): RABONE 1966
 Estivalle, H d' (1672): MAUNY 1961; THILMANS & MORAES 1981
 Estrées, Vice-admiral d' (1670-77): THILMANS & MORAES 1977a
 Ewart, J (1811-14): GORDON-BROWN 1970

 Fairfax, S (1797): ROBINSON 1976
 Faro, A de (1663-4): HAIR 1982
 Fernandes, D (1617): ANDRADE 1971
 Fernandes, V (ca. 1510): HAIR 1969c; HIRSCHBERG & DUCHATEAU 1972; RAINERO
 1970
 Firenze, B da (1656): SALVADORINI 1972
 Flegel, E (1885): DUFILL 1985

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Irwin, W (1843-6): HEATON 1976
 Isaacs, M (1832-40): HERMAN & KIRBY 1970; KIRBY 1968-9
 Isert, P (1786): GAYIBOR 1986; WINSNES 1986
- Jardin, E (1845-8): PINA 1972
 Jardine, A (1827): ROBINSON 1979
 João, F de St. (1536): BONTINCK 1977
 Johnson, S (1735): GOLD 1985
 Johnston, C (1844): PANKHURST 1972
- Keeling, W (1607): HAIR 1981a
 Kerdijk, L (1857-8): SCHEPEL 1978
 Kilham, H (1828): C: HAIR 1966c
 Kirk, J (1858-63): FOSKETT 1964, 1965
 Kirsten, J (1795): MULLER 1960
 Kitchingman, J (1817-48): CORDEUR & SAUNDERS 1976
 Koelle, S (1854): DALBY 1968; HAIR 1963a, 1968. B: ARNOTT 1965; BASCOM 1976; BOADI 1985; DALBY 1965; DELORD 1968; DONEUX 1969; ESSIEN 1970/71; GREENBERG 1966; GUTHRIE 1964; HAIR 1977; INNES 1967; KELLY 1968; KÖHLER 1964; KROPP 1966; LACROIX 1967; LAVER 1969; PROST 1966, 1969; ROWLANDS 1965; SAPIR 1970/71; SCHUH 1975a, b; SHIMIZU 1970/71, 1975; SPENCER 1966; STEWART 1966; WILLIAMSON 1966; WINSTON 1964-5; ZWERNEMANN 1967. C: HAIR 1966c
- Kolb, P (1705-13): JOPP 1979
 Krapf, J (1837-55): BENNETT 1960, BRIDGES 1968a. B: BRIDGES 1968b
 Krauss, F (1834-41): SPOHR 1966, 1969; SPOHR & CROWHURST 1969
 Kraut, G (1835): SCHOEMAN 1984
 Krebs, L (1817-44): FFOLLIOTT & LIVERSIDGE 1971
 Krusenstern: see Smee
- Labat, J-B (1720s): C: LAWRENCE 1961
 Laing, G (1824-6): BOVILL 1964
 Lang, M (1752): MALY 1972
 Latrobe, C (1815-16): BRADLOW 1969
 Lavanha, J (c. 1600): BOULÈGUE 1967b
 Leers, J (1665): B: HAIR 1969d
 Leigh, J (1837-8): KIRKMAN 1980
 Leo: see Africanus
 Lichtenstein, H (1803-7): DRASCHER 1967; SPOHR 1973
 Lima, J Suasso de (1825): SMIT 1975
 Linant (de Bellefonds), E (1876-7): GRAY 1964
 Linthorst, P (1807): YARAK 1978
 Livingstone, C (1861): BURKE 1974
 Livingstone, D (1852-73): BENNETT 1968; CLENDENNEN 1976; FOSKETT 1964; M'BOKOLO 1981; PLETICHA 1980; SCHAPERA 1960, 1961, 1963, 1974; SHEPPERSON 1965. B: BRADLOW 1973a, b; BRIDGES 1977/78
- Lobo, J (1623-36): BECKINGHAM 1984; COSTA 1971. B: COSTA 1969
 Lopez, D (early 1580s): BAL 1963. B: TOMANOVSKAYA 1982
 Low, H (1834): ROBINSON 1969
 Lübeling, J von (1599-1600): JONES 1983
 Lucca, L da (1711): FILESI 1971

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Ludlam, T (1808): HAIR 1962
 Ludolf, H / Ludolphus, J (1652-81): PANKHURST 1982; UHLIG 1983
 Ludwig, C (1838-9): B: SCHÜZ 1967
- MacCarthy, C (1819): FYFE 1977
 MacKenzie, J (1850s): DACHS 1975
 Maclear, T (1834-8): WARNER & WARNER 1984
 MacLeod, N (1875-6): TABLER 1963a
 MacQueen, J (1864): COLLINS 1967
 Maftaa, D (1875-80): GRAY 1966
 Mage, E (1863-6): PERSON 1980
 Magyar, L (1848-57): FODOR 1983; KUN 1960. B: FODOR 1977a
 Mahumane (1730): LIESEGANG 1977
 Maire, J Le (1615): HAIR (ARB) 1977
 Maire, J J Le (1695): B: SAINT-MARTIN 1964; STRITZL 1970
 Marchais, Chevalier des (1704-26): B: NARDIN 1985
 Marees, Pieter de (1601): B: AMISSAH 1968; HIRSCHBERG 1964
 Marmol, L del (1573): HAIR (ARB) 1979
 Martini, G (1875): SANDERSON 1961b
 Matos, R da Cunha (ca. 1840-42): RODRIGUES 1963. B: BRANCO 1972
 Mauch, C/K (1869-72): BERNHARD 1971; BURKE 1969; SELLKE 1971
 Mayer, B (1854): KATZ 1968
 McLeod, E (1850-88): GORDON 1970
 Merriman, J (1870-90): LEWSEN 1960
 Neurant, L (1863-90): NIENABER 1968
 Nhala: see Umhala
 Midgley, C (1861): LEVERTON 1972
 Modena, G da (1713-16): PIAZZA 1972-3
 Mollien, G (1818): DESCHAMPS 1967
 Moniteur du Sénégal (1857-64): GERRESCH 1973
 Monserat (1819-39): BARRRY 1970
 Montesarchio, G da (mid-17th c.): PIAZZA 1976
 Montgomery, J (1820-70): GIFFARD 1981
 Moodie, D (1838-41): SMITH 1960
 Moraes, H Bravo de (1726): ROCHA 1973
 Morgenstern, H (1771): RAVEN-HART 1965
 Morlang, F (1855-63): HUBER & DELLAGIACOMA 1973
 Müller, V (1662-9): JONES 1983; ZWERNEMANN 1968. B: BIRMINGHAM 1966;
 HIRSCHBERG 1970
- Nachtigal, G (1869-74): FISHER 1972-86; HENZE 1967; SCHIFFERS 1978. B:
 NACHTIGAL 1977
- Napoléon (Prince Imperial) (1879): BUTTERFIELD 1983
 Nelson, W (1877): ANONYMOUS 1973
 New, C (1860s-70s): SMITH 1971
 Newton, J (1750-54): MARTIN & SPURRELL 1962
 Niri, K (1884-1918): KILSON 1967
 Ntsikana (early 1820s): HODGSON 1980
- Oldendorp, C (1777): B: FODOR 1975, 1977b; HAIR 1963b. C: HAIR
 1966c
- Onkruijdt, C (1777-8): ROSS 1986
 Osifekunde (1845): CURTIN 1967; HAIR 1961
 Oudney, W (1822): BOVILL 1966

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Pallas, P (1787-9): FODOR 1975
 Paravicini, W (1803): KOCK 1965
 Paris, F de (1682-3): THILMANS 1976
 Park, M (1795-1806): ADAMS 1980; KEAY 1984; PLETICHA 1976; SCHINKEL 1984;
 SWIFT 1983
 Paterson, W (1777-9): FORBES & ROURKE 1980
 Paul III (Pope) (1536): BONTINCK 1977a
 Paver, R (1843-53): DUMINY 1979
 Pavia, A da (1685-1702): JADIN 1970
 Pereira, D Pacheco (c. 1505): RAINERO 1970. B: FAGE 1980
 Pereira, F Moraes (1753): NEWITT 1965
 Pereira, M Cerveira (1615-17): ANDRADE 1971
 Philipps, T (1820-30): FFOLLIOTT 1964; KEPPEL-JONES 1960
 Phipson, T (1849-76): CURREY 1968
 Piaggia, C (1863-5): BASSANI 1978
 Pigafetta, F (1591): BAL 1963; CARDONA 1978. B: TOMANOVSKAYA 1982
 Pigot, S (1819-21): RAINIER 1974
 Pike, M (1866): ANONYMOUS 1971
 Pinto, M Rosário (1734): AMBRÓSIO 1970
 Plütscho, H (1706): SPOHR 1967a
 Polo, M (late 13th c.): B: TEDESCHI 1981
 Pommegeorge, A Pruneau de (1789): MAUNY 1974
 Poncet, J (end of 17th c.): TEDESCHI 1966
 Ponsonby, H (1879): BUTTERFIELD 1984a
 Portuense, V (1686-96): MOTA 1974
 Potgieter, A (1849): AGAR-HAMILTON 1973
 Pottinger, H (1846-7): CORDEUR & SAUNDERS 1981
 Prestage, P (1884): REA 1963
 Pringle, T (1820-26): ROBINSON 1966; WAHL 1970
 Proa, J (1777-82): ANTOINE 1974
 Procter, L (1860-64): BENNETT & YLVISAKER 1971
 Protten, C (1764): TRUTENAU 1971. B: FODOR 1977b
 Pruneau, J (1752): BECKER 1983a
 Prutky, R (1752-6): RAINIERI 1980, 1982-3. B: PETRAČEK 1962
 Pryor, B (1859): VIGNE 1979
 Purchas, S (1613-25): HAIR 1981a. B: HAIR 1981b, 1986
- Quaque, P (1765-1811): CURTIN 1967
- Rabone, H (1854-90): RABONE 1966
 Rabone, W (1853): RABONE 1966
 Rainolds, R (1591): BOULÈGUE & MARQUET 1971
 Rask, J (1708-13): ØVRELID 1969
 Ray, J (1693): PANKHURST 1973
 Reade, W (1868-74): B: SHEPPERSON 1983
 Rebelo, J (1575): MOTA 1968
 Římar, J (1754): B: PETRAČEK 1962
 Rimbaud, A (1880s): ANONYMOUS 1979
 Roma, G F da (1648): BONTINCK 1964
 Romano, G da (17th c.): MACONI 1964
 Ropes, E (1882-92): BENNETT 1973
 Ruiters, D (1623): HAIR (ARB) 1974, 1975; THILMANS & ROSSIE 1969
 Russell, B (1879): BUTTERFIELD 1984b
 Rutherford (1827): B: FFOLLIOTT 1964

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Sandoval, A de (1627): HAIR (ARB) 1975. B: TARDIEU 1984
 Savona, C da (1775): JADIN 1963; TOSO 1974, 1976
 Scelier, Sieur (1677): MORAES 1981
 Schmelen, S (1815-16): SCHMIDT 1979
 Schmidt, G (1737-44): BREDEKAMP & HATTINGH 1981
 Schnitzer, E: see Emin Pascha
 Schön, J (1841-50): AJAYI 1970a; NEWMAN 1971
 Schouten, W (1615): HAIR (ARB) 1977
 Schreiner, O (1883): JACOBSON 1971
 Schreyer (1681): WESSELY 1972
 Schweinfurth, G (1868-71): GUSSENBAUER n.d.
 Scott, T (1851-2): BUTTERFIELD 1985a
 Seetzen, U (1818): SOELKEN 1967
 Semple, R (1798-1803): BRADLOW 1968
Senegal Company Dictionary: C: HAIR 1966c
 Shaw, W (1820-72): HAMMOND-TOOKE 1972; SADLER 1967
 Silva, M Galvao da (1785-90): BHILA 1972
 Sintra, V de (ca. 1610): RAU 1963
 Smit, E (1836-9): MEARS 1972
 Smith, A (1820-72): KIRBY 1965; LYE 1975
 Smith, W (1727): B: FEINBERG 1979; JONES 1980
 Snee, T (1811): OLDEROGGE 1969/1971b
 Snelgrave, W (1727): JOHNSON 1978
 Soga, T (1857-71): WILLIAMS 1983
 Solomon, E (1843): WILSON 1974
 Somerville, W (1799-1802): BRADLOW 1979
 Sousa, F de (1624-30): HEINTZE 1985. B: HEINTZE 1981
South African Commercial Advertiser (1834-47): B: FRYE 1968
South African Outlook (1870-1970): WILSON & PERROT 1971
 Sparrman, A (1772-6): FORBES 1975-7. B: FODOR 1975; FORBES 1978
 Speedy, T (1861-84): PANKHURST 1983
 Springer, B (1505-7): B: WESSELY 1972
 Stabb, H (1875): TABLER 1966a, 1967
 Stanley, H (1868-89): BENESCH 1979; BENNETT 1970; PLETICHA 1979; STANLEY & NEAME 1961. B: BONTINCK 1968
 Steinbart, G (1855-8): SCHWAR & JARDINE 1975
 Stel, S van der (1685-6): WATERHOUSE 1979
 Stewart, J (1863): BLACKIE 1976
 Stout, B (1798): PORTER 1975
 Stretch, C (1840s): CRANKSHAW 1960
 Stubbs, T (1820-76): MAXWELL & MCGEOGH 1978
 Swan, S (1815-18): BROOKS 1960, 1970
 Swellengrebel, H (1778-92): SCHUTTE 1982
- Tas, A (1705-6): BÖESEKEN 1970
 Tavares, M (1760s): BRÁSIO 1979
 Tavares, P (1967): JADIN 1967
 Teixeira, A da Silva (1803): BONTINCK 1977b
 Thévenot, J de (1664-84): PANKHURST 1973
 Thevet, A (1575): HAIR 1969a
 Thomas, T (1859-70): BROWN 1971
 Thompson, G (1821-4): FORBES 1967-8
 Thomson, J (1879-83): ROTBERG 1968a,b; YOUNG 1962
 Thornton, R (1858-63): TABLER 1963b

INDEX OF PRIMARY AUTHORS

- Tilleman, E (1690s): C: LAWRENCE 1961
 Tinoco, A Velho (1575): MOTA 1968
 Trichardt, L: see Trigardt
 Trigardt, L (1836-8): ROUX 1964
 Trollope, A (1878): DAVIDSON 1973
 Tucker, C (1879): BUTTERFIELD 1985b
 Turner, S (1864-1901): CHILD 1980
 Tutschek, K & L (1840s): B: HAIR 1969b

 Ulsheimer/Ultzheimer, A (1603-4): JONES 1983; SELLKE 1971
 Umhala, N (1878): SAUNDERS 1979

 Vaillant, F Le (1781-4): ROBINSON 1973b
 Valentyn, F (1685-1713): RAIDT 1971-3
 Vayssière, J-A (1851): SANTI 1965
 Veloso, G (1515-16): TRACEY 1968. B: DICKINSON 1971
 Victorin, J (1853-5): RUDNER & RUDNER 1968
 Villault, N (1666-71): B: THILMANS & MORAES 1976
 Vingboons, J (mid-17th c.): THILMANS 1975
 Vletter, A de (1882-8): PLOEGER 1962

 Waddell, H (1829-58): JONES (G.) 1970
 Wagner, Z (1633-68): SPOHR 1967b
 Wainwright, J (1873-4): BONTINCK 1977b
 Vargee (1822): CURTIN 1967; OLDEROGGE 1971a
 Waterston, J (1866-1905): BEAN & HEYNINGEN 1983
 Verner, R (1862): LUCIUS 1980
 Westbeech, G (1885-8): TABLER 1963a
 Whitford, J (1877): HOPKINS 1967
 Wilmot, R (1856): LEWSEN 1984
 Wilson, A (1839): ANONYMOUS 1984
 Winterbottom, T (1792-6): HARGREAVES & BACKETT 1969
 Witbooi, H (1884-94): GUGELBERGER 1984; REINHARD 1982
 Wollaston, J (1840-51): RICHINGS 1967
 Wolseley, G (1875-80): BUTTERFIELD 1984b; PRESTON 1971, 1973
 Wre(e)de(n), G (1663): B: SPOHR 1963
 Wright, J (1839): CURTIN 1967
 Wurmb, F von (1775): LANGHAM-CARTER 1973
 Wyley, A (1859): ROCHLIN 1960

 Xavier, I (1758): NEWITT 1963

 Zagiell, I (1884): CHOJNACKI 1964
 Ziegenbalg, B (1706): SPOHR 1967a
 Zimmermann, J (1858): BERRY 1972
 Zurara, G de (mid-15th c.): BOURDON 1960; RAINERO 1970

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX

NOTE: Items marked "." are in the addenda (p. 153).

1. Angola, western Zaïre, Congo

List A: ANDRADE 1971; ARQVIVOS DE ANGOLA 1960-63; BAL 1963, 1964; BONTINCK 1964, 1966, 1969, 1970, 1977a; BONTINCK & NSASI 1978; BONTINCK & SEGOVIA 1972; BOXER 1960b, 1965; BRASIO 1952-85 & 1958-79, 1966-9, 1969, 1971, 1972, 1979; BRUNSCHWIG 1969, 1972; CAPELA 1977; CARDONA 1978; COQUERY-VIDROVITCH 1969; COUTO 1972, 1979; CUNNISON 1960; CUVELIER 1960; FERREZ 1965; FILES 1968, 1971; FODOR 1983; GREINDL 1977; HEINTZE 1985; JADIN 1961, 1963, 1966, 1967, 1968, 1970, 1975; JADIN & DICORATO 1974; KUN 1960; LEGUZZANO 1965; MACONI 1964; OBENGA 1973; OLIVEIRA 1968, 1971; PIAZZA 1972-3, 1976; PINA 1967; RAINERO ca.1973; REBELO 1970; SALVADORINI 1973, 1983; SANTOS 1976; SCHENETTI 1978; SIMON 1976; STANLEY & NEAME 1961; TOSO 1973, 1974, 1976, 1977, 1979, 1984.

List B: BONTINCK 1968, 1974, 1976, 1977c, 1980; BOXER 1960c; CHILDS 1960; FODOR 1977a; HEINTZE 1981; MILLER 1973, 1984; PISTONI 1969; PRIOUL 1985; STAMM 1970; THORNTON 1979; TOMANOVSKAYA 1982.

List C: BONTINCK 1963; FILES 1977, 1978; FILES & VILLAPADIerna 1978; HEINTZE 1983; MUDIMBE-BOYI 1975.

2. Atlantic Islands (São Tomé, Príncipe, Fernando Po)

List A: AMBRÓSIO 1970; ARDENER 1972; BRANCO 1970; KERDIJK 1978; MAUNY & MORAES 1975; MONOD 1961; SAUVAGEOT 1961; MOTA & MAUNY 1978.

List B: BRANCO 1972; HAIR 1966b.

3. Bénin (Dahomey), Togo

List A: ANTOINE 1974; DANTZIG 1975-84, 1976, 1978; GAYIBOR 1976, 1986; JOHNSON 1974, 1978; NEWBURY 1966; OVRELID 1969; VERGER 1968; WINSNES 1986; WRIGHT 1968.

List B: DANTZIG 1984; LAW 1982; VALSECCHI 19769.

See Index of Primary Authors: Dalzel.

4. Central Africa

Central African Republic, eastern Zaïre, Malawi, western Tanzania, Zambia, Zimbabwe

List A: ANONYMOUS 1969; BENNETT 1969; BENNETT & YLVISAKER 1971; BHILA 1972; BROWN 1971; BURKE 1969, 1974; CLENDENNEN 1981; GELFAND 1968; GOMA-FOUTOU 1984; GUSSENBAUER 1984; LIESEGANG 1977; MITFORD-BARBERTON 1966; MOTA 1964; NATIONAL ARCHIVES 1962-75; PLETICHA 1985; REA 1963; ROBERTS 1979; SELLKE 1971; TABLER 1960, 1963a, 1963b, 1966a,b, 1967, 1971; TRACEY 1968; WOLF 1971, 1976.

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX

List B: BURKE 1978; DICKINSON 1971

See Index of Primary Authors: Livingstone, Stanley.

5. East African Coast

including Mozambique, Zanzibar and the Comoro Islands

List A: ALPERS 1983; BARRADAS 1970; BEACHEY 1976; BENNETT 1960, 1969, 1973; BENNETT & BROOKS 1965; BOXER 1960b, 1963; BRASIO 1970; CARREIRA 1979; CLENDENNEN 1976; DEBIEN 1982; FREEMAN-GRENVILLE 1962a, b, 1965, 1980; GONÇALVES 1969; GRAY 1962, 1964b; GUERREIRO 1960; HOPPE 1965; HUNTINGFORD 1980; JENSON 1973; KIRKMAN 1980; LIESEGANG 1966; LOMBARD-JOURDAN 1980; MARSH 1961; MONTEZ 1970-73; NATIONAL ARCHIVES 1962-75; NEWITT 1963, 1965; OLDEROGGE 1969/1971b; RAU 1963; ROCHA 1973; ROSS 1986; ROUX 1964; SANTANA 1964-74; SCOTT 1967; SIMPSON 1969; SOUTO 1962, 1963; SUTTON 1970; TABLER ET AL. 1982; VELHO 1967-8.

List B: BRIDGES 1968b; HAIR 1981b; MOTA 1973; SICARD 1970.

6. East African Interior

(See also 4. Central Africa)

List A: ANONYMOUS 1981; BECK 1964; BENNETT 1969; BONTINCK 1977b; BRIDGES 1968a, b, 1982; GRAY 1961-8, 1964, 1966; HENZE 1978; LEE 1960; LOW 1971; MARSH 1961; MOORHEAD 1961; RICHARDS 1961; RICHARDS & PLACE 1960; ROTBERG 1968a,b; SCHIFFERS & SIMONS 1983; SMITH 1971; WATERFIELD 1966; YOUNG 1962.

List B: BRIDGES 1976; MARISSAL 1981.

7. Ethiopia

List A: ALLIER 1980-83; ANONYMOUS 1979; AREGAY 1964; BECKINGHAM 1964, 1984; BECKINGHAM & HUNTINGFORD 1961; COSTA 1971; DAVIS 1971; DONZEL 1979; GERMA BASAH 1966; GOLD 1985; MALY 1972; PANKHURST 1965, 1972, 1973, 1980, 1982, 1983; TAFLA 1982-3; TEDESCHI 1966; TUBIANA 1961; UHLIG 1983.

List B: CHOJNACKI 1964; COSTA 1969; IZARN 1969; LOCKHART 1969; PETRACEK 1962; TEDESCHI 1981.

8. Ghana (Gold Coast)

List A: ANONYMOUS 1965, 1966; BAESJOU 1979; BERRY 1972; BROOKS 1962; BUSIA 1966; BROSNAN 1965; COLLINS 1964; DAAKU 1966, 1970; DAAKU & DANTZIG 1966; DALBY & HAIR 1968; DANTZIG 1978; EDWARDS 1969; HENIGE 1974; IRWIN 1964; JOHNSON n.d. (c.1965), 1968, 1971; JONES 1983, 1985; JONES-QUARTEY 1968; KEA 1976, 1979a-d; KILSON 1967; LANGE 1985; McCASKIE & WIAFE 1979; METCALFE 1964, 1968; MOTA 1972; NORREGARD 1964; OVRELID 1969; SANDERS 1978; SCHEPEL 1978; TRUTENAU 1971; VOGT 1973, 1974; WARD 1966a, b; WILLIS 1967; WINSNES 1986; WRIGHT 1968; YARAK 1977, 1978; ZWERNEMANN 1968.

List B: AMISSAH 1968; BIRMINGHAM 1966; BOADI 1985; DANTZIG 1974, 1975-84; FEINBERG 1979; FODOR 1977b; HAIR 1966a; HIRSCHBERG 1964, 1970; KROPP 1966; McCASKIE 1984; STEWART 1966; VALSECCHI 1979.

List C: JONES 1986; LAWRENCE 1961

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX

9. Guinea Bissau, Guinea Conakry

List A: ANDRADE 1970; CARREIRA 1984; DUCHATEAU 1974; HAIR 1985; MOTA 1968, 1974, 1977; MOUSER 1979a.

List B: GREENBERG 1966; HAIR 1960.

10. Liberia, Ivory Coast

List A: BROOKS 1968; DALBY & HAIR 1964; FISHER 1971; GIVENS 1976; HAIR 1968, 1974a; LYNCH 1971, 1978; MARTIN & SPURRELL 1962; MILLER 1978; WILEY 1980.

List B: HAIR 1962, 1964; DONEUX 1969; JONES 1981; NARDIN & SPIRIK 1970; ZWERNEMANN 1966.

List C: JONES 1986

11. Southern Nigeria, Cameroun, Gabon

List A: AJAYI 1970a, b; ARDENER 1968; ATANDA 1972; AYANDELE 1968; BOVILL 1966; BRÁSIO 1965; BRUNSCHWIG 1972; EDWARDS 1967; GOMA-FOUTOU 1984; HAIR 1961; HALLETT 1965; HODGKIN 1960; HOPKINS 1967; JONES 1970; KIRK-GREENE 1962; MAUNY 1967; RYDER 1969; SALVADORINI 1972; WALLS 1965.

List B: BASCOM 1976; DAGET 1982b; ESSIEN 1970/71; GREEN 1967; HAIR 1969e, 1977; KELLY 1968; LAVER 1969; MEYER 1982; ROWLANDS 1965; WILLIAMSON 1966; WINSTON 1964-5.

List C: HAIR 1967b; LAW 1973.

12. Senegambia, Cape Verde Islands

List A: ADAMS 1980; ANTOINE 1974; BA 1976; BARRY 1970, 1972; BECKER 1972, 1981, 1982a, b, 1983a, b, 1985; BECKER & MARTIN 1974, 1976, 1977a, b, 1980; BECKER, MARTIN & MBODJ 1978; BERQUE 1979; BLANC 1971; BOULÈGUE 1967a, b; BOULÈGUE & MARQUET 1971; BOULÈGUE & PINTO-BULL 1966; BOURDON 1960; CARREIRA 1983; DEBIEN 1964; DELCOURT 1974; DESCHAMPS 1967; DIOP 1984; GANIER 1968; GERRESCH 1973; HAIR 1985; HALLETT 1964; KEAY 1984; LEPORACE 1966; LY 1964; MAUNY 1974; MORAES 1973, 1976, 1981; MOTA 1968, 1969a, 1970; PERSON 1980; PINA 1972; RITCHIE 1967, 1968; SADJI 1980; SCHINKEL 1984; SWIFT 1983; TEYSSIER 1968; THÉSÉE 1985; THILMANS 1971, 1975, 1976; THILMANS & MORAES 1970, 1972, 1977a, 1977b; THILMANS & ROSSIE 1969.

List B: SAINT-MARTIN 1964, 1966; SAPIR 1970/71; STRITZL 1970.

13. Sierra Leone

List A: ANDRADE 1970; BROOKS 1960; FYFE 1964, 1977; HAIR 1967a, 1971, 1974a, b, 1981a, 1982; HAIR, ARB series; HARGREAVES & BACKETT 1969; HARRIS 1962; HIRSCHBERG & DUCHATEAU 1972; KALOUS 1974; KUP 1967; MARTIN & SPURRELL 1962; MOTA 1969b, 1977; MOTA & MAUNY 1975.

List B: DALBY 1965; INNES 1967; JONES 1981.

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX

14. Southern Africa A. Exclusively the Cape including Ciskei and Transkei

List A: ANONYMOUS 1971, 1972, 1973, 1976; BÖESEKEN 1970; BOOTH 1968; BOUCHER 1981; BRADLOW 1968, 1969; BREDEKAMP & HATTINGH 1981; BUTTERFIELD 1982; CASADA 1974; COOLHAAS 1962-72, 1969; CORDEUR & SAUNDERS 1976, 1981; DUMINY & ADCOCK 1979; EDGECOMBE 1968; EVANS ET AL. 1969; FERGUSON & IMMELMAN 1961; FFOLLIOTT & LIVERSIDGE 1971; FORBES 1975/7; FORBES & ROURKE 1980; FRYE 1971; GORDON-BROWN 1970; HAMMOND-TOOKE 1972; HEATON 1976; HEESE 1983; HINCHCLIFF 1977; HODGSON 1980; HOLT 1965; IMMELMAN 1969; JONES 1968; JOPP 1979; KEPPEL-JONES 1960; KOCK 1968; LANGHAM-CARTER 1973; LUCIUS 1980; MAXWELL & McGEOGH 1978; MEINTJES 1974; MULLER 1960, 1978a, b; NASH 1979; PORTER 1975; RABONE 1966; RAIDT 1971-3; RAINIER 1974; RAVEN-HART 1965, 1967a, b, 1968, 1970a, b, 1971, 1976; RICHINGS 1967; ROBINSON 1965-6, 1966, 1969, 1973a, 1978, 1979, 1982; ROCHLIN 1960; ROSENTHAL 1969; ROSENTHAL & DAWE 1982; RUDNER 1968; SADLER 1967; SAUNDERS 1979, 1980; SCHUTTE 1970, 1982; SCHWAR & JARDINE 1975; SCOTT 1967, 1970; SHELL 1984, 1985; SMIT 1975; SPOHR 1964, 1966, 1967a, b, 1970; VARLEY 1960-61; VARLEY & VARLEY 1962; VIGNE 1979; WAHL 1970; WARNER & WARNER 1984, 1985; WESSELY 1972.

List B: FORBES 1978; ROBINSON 1973b; WESSELY 1972

List C: SZALAY 1974

B. The Cape and Elsewhere including Botswana, Lesotho, Swaziland

List A: AGAR-HAMILTON 1973; ANONYMOUS 1960, 1962-3, 1968, 1984; BEAN & HEYNINGEN 1983; BLACKIE 1976; BOOTH 1967; BRADLOW & BRADLOW 1979; BURKE 1969; BUTTERFIELD 1983, 1984a, b, 1985a, b; CASADA 1980; CHILD 1978, 1979, 1980; CLARKE 1984; CLENDENNEN 1981; COPE 1977; CURREY 1968; DACHS 1975; DAVIDSON 1973; DRASCHER 1967; EDGECOMBE 1982; FORBES 1967-8; GERMOND 1967; GIFFORD 1981; GORDON 1970; GORDON & TALBOT 1983; GORDON-BROWN 1967; HERMAN & KIRBY 1970; HOUGHTON & DAGUT 1972; JAARSVELD 1972; JACOBSON 1971; KENNEDY 1961-4; KIRBY 1965, 1968-9, 1971; KOCK 1965; KRIGE 1983; LEVERTON 1972; LEWSEN 1960; 1984; LYE 1975; MAXWELL & McGEOGH 1978; MEARS 1971, 1972; MITFORD-BARBERTON 1966, 1970; NIENABER 1968; NIENABER & RAVEN-HART 1970; PLOEGER 1962; PRESTON 1971, 1973; ROUX 1964; RYCROFT 1984; SANDILANDS 1977; SCHAPERA 1974; SCHOEMAN 1984, 1985; SMITH 1960; SPOHR 1965, 1969, 1973; SPOHR & CROWHURST 1969; SUID-AFRIKAANSE ARGIEFSTUKKE 1960-82; TABLER 1969, 1971a, b; TOIT 1963; TOIT & GILIOMEE 1983; WATERHOUSE 1979; WILLIAMS 1983; WILSON & PERROT 1971.

List B: BRADLOW 1973a, 1978; FFOLLIOTT 1964; FRYE 1968; HARINGTON 1973; LEVERTON 1964; NASH 1978, 1981; SCHUTTE 1968; SCHÜZ 1967; SPOHR 1963.

List C: HAIR 1980.

15. Namibia

List A: GUGELBERGER 1984; LAU 1984-5; MORITZ 1981; REINHARD 1982; SCHMIDT 1979.

GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX

16. Sudan (Republic)

List A: ARNDT 1981a, b; BASSANI 1978; FISHER 1972-86; GUSSENBAUER 1984; HILL 1970, 1984; HUBER & DELLAGIACOMA 1973; NACHTIGAL 1977; O'FAHEY 1973; SANDERSON 1961a, b; SANTI 1965; SANTI & HILL 1980; TONIOLO & HILL 1975.

List B: CASTELLI 1983; HAIR 1969b.

List C: KREMSER 1981.

17. West African Coast

(more than two countries)

List A: BECKER 1983; BENNETT & BROOKS 1965; BLANC 1971; BROOKS 1970; CARREIRA 1969a,b; DAVIES 1976; DEBIEN 1972; DEBIEN ET AL. 1978; GARCIA 1983; HAIR 1963b, 1969a, c, 1976, 1981a; HIRSCHBERG 1969; HOPKINS 1967; JACKSON 1972; JONES 1983, 1985; KATZ 1968; MAUNY 1961; NICOL 1969; PINA 1972; RAINERO 1970; SCHEPEL 1978; SMYTHE 1976; THILMANS & MORAES 1979; "WACELET" 1968.

List B: BIRMINGHAM 1970; DAGET 1975, 1982a; FAGE 1980; HAIR 1963a, 1966b, 1974c; MOUSER 1979b; NARDIN 1985; SHEPPERSON 1983; TARDIEU 1984; THILMANS & MORAES 1976, 1981.

List C: HAIR 1966c, 1970; JONES 1982; LAWRENCE 1961; MAUNY 1975-6.

18. West and Central Sudan

(Mali, Burkina Faso, Niger, Chad, Northern Nigeria)

List A: BERQUE 1979; BOVILL 1964, 1966; DALBY 1968; DUFILL 1985; HALLETT 1964; JOHNSTON & MUFFETT 1972; LANGE 1972, 1981; LANGE & BERTHOUD 1972; MONOD 1977; NEWMAN 1971; OLDEROGGE 1971a; PERSON 1980; SCHUBARTH-ENGELSCHALL 1984; SOELKEN 1967; WILLIS 1966.

List B: ARNOTT 1965; DELORD 1968; FISHER 1978; KÖHLER 1964; LACROIX 1967; PROST 1966, 1969; SCHUH 1975a, b; SHIMIZU 1970/71-75; ZWERNEMANN 1967.

See Index of Primary Authors: Barth, Nachtigal, Park.

ADDENDA

LIST A

BECKER, Charles & MARTIN, Victor

- #1976 *Histoire sociale, économique, politique et religieuse du Kayor et du Baol (1695-1809). Partie II: Recueil de documents historiques* (Kaolack: mimeo. Pp. 95).
Trpn., with a brief sub-intrn. for each document.

JACKSON, Blyden, intr.

- 1972 Richard Drake: *Revelations of a Slave Smuggler. Being the Autobiography of Capt. Rich'd. Drake, an African Trader for Fifty Years - from 1807 to 1857* (Northbrook, Ill. Pp. xi, 100).
Facsimile of a highly dubitable source, publd. 1860. See List B: McCASKIE 1984.
Intrn. (brief) adds virtually nothing.

PANKHURST, Richard

- 1972 intr. Charles Johnston: *Travels in Southern Abyssinia* (2 vols.: Farnborough. Pp. vi, xvi, 492; viii, 447).
Facsimile (original = 1844).
Intrn. (brief): biogr.; extracts from J's articles in *Hunt's London Journal* (1844).
1973 "Ethiopia in the 17th and early 18th centuries: the report of Ambassador Mikael and the imaginary description of John Campbell", *Ethiopia Observer* 16: 97-107.
Reprints extracts from the 1687 English ed. of Jean de Thévenot, *Relation d'un voyage fait au Levant* (1664-84), John Ray, *A Collection of Curious Travels & Voyages* (1693) and John Campbell, *The Travels and Adventures of Edward Brown* (1739), interspersed with commentary (brief).

SOELKEN, Heinz

- 1967 *Seetzens Affadéh. Ein Beitrag zur Kotoko-Sprachdokumentation* (Berlin. Pp. 358).
Detailed study of vocabularies of Kotoko people (from south of Lake Chad) collected by Ulrich Jasper S and publd. in J.S.Vater, *Proben deutscher Volks-Mundarten...* (1818).

TAFILA, Bairu

- 1982-3 "Some documents on nineteenth-century Ethiopia from the *Nachlass* of Gerhard Rohlfs", *Rassegna di Studi Etiopici* (Rome) 29: 175-235.
Trpn. of 34 letters written in German to GR by Europeans in Ethiopia (F.Hassen, W.Schimper, A.Stecker), 1881-5.
Intrn. (good).

UHLIG, Siegbert
*1983

Hiob Ludolfs "Theologia Aethiopica" (2 vols.: Wiesbaden. Pp. 339).

Scholarly ed. and transn. of HL's (= Job Ludolphus') interview with the Ethiopian scholar Abba Gregorius, 1652, on the teaching and customs of the Ethiopian church: questions in Latin, answers in Ethiopian and Latin.

Intrn.: detailed discussion of the work (extant in 4 mss.) and its origin.

Apps.: supplementary documents (with detailed ann.); the contribution of J.A.Fabricius.

Index: general.

LIST B

COSTA, Manuel G. da
1969

"Jeronimo Lobo reveals Ethiopia to Europe in the middle of the XVIIth Century", *Proceedings of the 3rd International Conference of Ethiopian Studies* (Addis Ababa) 123-30.
Discusses L's *Itinerario*, on Ethiopia 1623-32.

